

SH 21-76

UNITED STATES ARMY



RANGER HANDBOOK

**RANGER TRAINING BRIGADE
UNITED STATES ARMY INFANTRY SCHOOL
FORT BENNING, GEORGIA
JULY 1992**

THE SERVICE COURSE DEVELOPS STUDENTS BE TRAINED HERE TO PERFORM EFFECTIVELY AS SMALL UNIT LEADERS IN A PSYCHIC, MENTAL ENVIRONMENT UNDER MENTAL AND PHYSICAL STRESS APPROXIMATE HERE FOUND IN COMBAT. SERVICE SCHOOL INCREASES CONFIDENCE AND COMPETENCE IN PSYCHIC BARRAGE LEADERS PERCEIVE THE MENTAL CONTRIBUTION IS SO CRUCIAL IN CLIMAX OF BELIEVABLE HIGH STRESS AND DEFERENCE, IN WHICH BARRAGE STUDENTS LEARN HOW ENEMY AND OTHERS GET INTO EXACT ORDER PREVIOUS. COURSE IS DEMONSTRATED THE CHALLENGE OF LEADING AND FOLLOWING WHILE OVERCOMING OBSTACLES MORE THAN ANYTHING ELSE, BARRAGE SCHOOL WILL BE CONTACT. COURSE WILL USE CAPABILITY TO BE BARRAGE LEADERS, AND ENCOURAGE FURTHER DEVELOPMENT OF POSITIVE, SEE-NO-PROBLEM ATTITUDE. IT TRAINS THE STUDENT WITH PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE IN THE APPLICATION OF THE TACTICS AND TECHNIQUES OF BARRAGE OPERATIONS IN WOODS, GRASS, LOWLAND SWAMP AND MOUNTAINOUS TERRAINMENTS. COURSE IS FOCUS ON DEVELOPMENT OF INDIVIDUAL LEADERSHIP SKILLS THROUGH THE APPLICATION OF THE TECHNIQUES OF LEADERSHIP WHILE FURNISHING ESSENTIAL MILITARY SKILLS IN THE PLANNING AND CONDUCT OF BARRAGE INFANTRY, AIRBORNE, AND ASSAULT AND AMPHIBIOUS BOMB AND PLATOON-SIZE COMBAT OPERATIONS.

PREFACE

THIS PUBLICATION IS BOTH AN EXTRACT OF DOCTRINAL PUBLICATIONS AND A COMPILATION OF TACTICS, TECHNIQUES AND PROCEDURES TAUGHT IN THE U.S. ARMY RANGER SCHOOL. IT IS PRINCIPALLY INTENDED AS A POCKET REFERENCE FOR STUDENTS OF THE U.S. ARMY RANGER SCHOOL. ITS SECONDARY USE IS FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF SMALL UNIT LEADERS IN THE FIELD ARMY AND FOR THEIR USE AS A POCKET BULID.

THE TECHNIQUES LISTED HEREIN WILL BE TAUGHT AT THE U.S. ARMY RANGER SCHOOL. STUDENT GRACES ARE BASED ON THEIR EMPLOYMENT OF SOUND, DOCTRINAL PRINCIPLES, NOT ON THE EMPLOYMENT OF A SPECIFIC TECHNIQUE.

RANGER OATH

Recognizing that I volunteered as a Ranger, fully knowing the hazards of my chosen profession, I will always endeavor to uphold the prestige, honor, and high "esprit de corps" of the Rangers.

Recognizing the fact that a Ranger is a more elite warrior and soldier of the cutting edge of battle by land, sea, or air, I accept the fact that as a Ranger my country expects me to go further, faster and fight harder than any other soldier.

Never shall I fail my comrades. I will always keep myself mentally alert, physically strong and morally straight and I will shoulder more than my share of the task whenever it has to. One Hundred-percent and then some.

Gallantly will I show the world that I am a specially selected and well trained soldier. My courage to superior officers, readiness of mind and care of equipment shall set the example for others to follow.

Energetically will I meet the enemies of my country. I shall defeat them on the field of battle for I am better trained and will fight with all my might. Surrender is not a Ranger word. I will never leave a fallen comrade to fall into the hands of the enemy and under no circumstances will I ever surrender my country.

Speedily will I display the integral attributes required to fight on as the Ranger objectives are completed the mission, though I be the last survivor.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Ranger Creed

- Ranger Training Brigade Mission/Ranger School Intent

Chapter 1 - Leadership

..... Duties/Responsibilities.....1-2
..... Assumption of Command.....1-13

Chapter 2 - Operations

..... Mission Tactics.....2-1
..... Troop Leading Procedures.....2-4
..... Combat Intelligence.....2-12
..... Combat Orders.....2-17
..... Operation Order Annexes.....2-27
..... Tasks.....2-36
..... Coordination Checklists.....2-46

Chapter 3 - Fire Support

Chapter 4 - Movement

..... Techniques.....4-1
..... Tactical Methods.....4-11
..... Ranger RPs.....4-17

Chapter 5 - Patrolling

..... Planning Considerations.....5-1
..... Five Point Contingency Plan.....5-13
..... Reconnaissance Operations.....5-24
..... Combat Patrol.....5-24
..... Rail.....5-31
..... OPT/Re-entry.....5-31
..... Link-up.....5-37
..... Patrol Base.....5-39
..... Movement to Contact.....5-51

Chapter 6 - Battle Drills

..... Platoon Attack.....6-2
..... Squad Attack.....6-11
..... React to Contact.....6-17
..... React to Ambush.....6-19

Chapter 6 - Battle Drills (Cont'd)

..... React to Indirect Fire.....6-21
..... React to Air Attack.....6-22
..... Break Out a Bulker.....6-24
..... Enter Building/Clear Room.....6-26
..... Enter/Clear a Trench.....6-37
..... Breach a Mine Wire Barrier.....6-45

Chapter 7 - Communications

..... Troubleshooting Radio.....7-13

Chapter 8 - Army Aviation

Chapter 9 - Stream Crossing and Waterborne Operations

Chapter 10 - Military Mountaineering

Chapter 11 - Evasion/Survival

Chapter 12 - First Aid

Chapter 13 - Combat Service Support

..... MCVAC Request.....13-17

Chapter 14 - Search, Surveillance, and Target Acquisition

Chapter 15 - Demolitions and Mines

Glossary

References

Ranger's Standing Orders

CHAPTER ONE

LEADERSHIP

1-1. GENERAL. The most essential element of combat power is complete and consistent leadership. Leadership provides courage, direction, and motivation in combat. It is the leader who will determine the degree to which resources, discipline, and protection are maximized and who will ensure these elements are effectively tolerated and who will enable you to bring them to bear against the enemy.

While leadership requirements differ with unit size and type, all combat leaders must have an of character who must lead and motivate soldiers and the tools of war. They must act with courage and conviction during the uncertainty and confusion of battle. The primary function of tactical leaders is to inspire soldiers to accomplish things in dangerous, stressful circumstances.

A good leader will:

- Give things of his unit by issuing appropriate orders, establishing priority of tasks, and establishing/maintaining security.
- Motivate his men by setting the example and always maintaining a positive attitude.
- Demonstrate initiative by taking positive action in the absence of orders and by making sound and timely tactical decisions on his own.
- Effectively communicate by giving specific instructions to accomplish the mission, keeping the unit informed, and by involving key leaders in the decision-making process.
- Supervise by inspecting to ensure tasks are accomplished to standard, making appropriate corrections, and taking immediate administrative responsibility for assigned tasks.

As a leader, there are certain things that you must do, know, and say:

111 TECHNICALLY AND TACTICALLY PROFICIENT: can accomplish all tasks to standards that are required to accomplish the entire mission.

121 POSITIVE PROFESSIONAL CHARACTER TRAITS: Courage, Dependability, Candor, Consistency and Integrity.
d. 1000:

101 Four major factors of leadership and how they relate to each other: The Led, The Leader, The Situation, and Communications.

102 Yourself and your subordinates: Strengths and weaknesses of your character, knowledge and skills. Continually develop your strengths and work on improving your weaknesses.

103 Your soldiers and look out for their well-being. Know and care for your soldiers. Train them for the rigors of combat, take care of their physical/health needs, and discipline/reward them.

101 BEAR RESPONSIBILITY AND TAKE RESPONSIBILITY FOR YOUR ACTIONS: Leaders must exercise initiative, be successful, and take advantage of opportunities of the battlefield that will lead to victory. Accept just criticism and take corrective action for mistakes.

102 MAKE SOUND AND TIMELY DECISIONS: Rapidly assess situations and make sound decisions. Gather essential information, announce decisions in time for soldiers to react, and consider short/long-term effects of your decision.

103 SET THE EXAMPLE: Be a role model for your soldiers. Set high, but attainable standards, be willing to do what you require of your soldiers, and share dangers and hardships with your soldiers.

104 KNOW YOUR SUBORDINATES INSIDE-OUT: Keeping your subordinates informed helps them make decisions and execute plans with your intent, encourages initiative, increases teamwork, and enhances morale.

102 Develop a sense of responsibility in your subordinates. Teach, challenge, and develop your subordinates. Delegation indicates you trust your subordinates and will save them what you can't do yourself.

103 ENFORCE THE TASK (B KNOWLEDGE, SUPPORTED, AND ACCOMPLISHED): Soldiers need to know what you expect from them, what you want done, what the standard is, and what you want it.

104 BUILD THE TEAM: Train and stress (Push your soldiers until they are confident in the task) technical/tactical abilities. Develop a team spirit that motivates them to go willingly and confidently into combat.

105 EMPLOY YOUR UNIT IN ACCORDANCE WITH (B CAPABILITIES: Know the capabilities and limitations of your unit. Use the battle focus process to identify those vital tasks essential to mission accomplishment and conduct tough, challenging, and realistic training to ensure your unit achieves Army standards on those tasks.

1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

To complete his assigned tasks, every soldier in the platoon must do his job. Each soldier must accomplish his specific duties and responsibilities and be a part of the team.

a. **Platoon Sergeant.** He is responsible for all that the platoon does or fails to do. This includes the tactical employment, training, administration, personnel management, and logistics of his platoon. He does this by planning, making timely decisions, issuing orders, assigning tasks, and supervising platoon activities. He must know his men and how to employ the platoon as a weapon. He is responsible for motivating and employing all assigned or attached one-man or two-man weapons. He must also

have the to employ supporting weapons. The rifle platoon leader--

- 11) Sets the example and the standards.
- 12) Leads the platoon in support of company and or battalion missions.
- 13) Takes the initiative to accomplish the mission in the absence of orders. Informs his commander of his actions when operating without orders.
- 14) Works with the staff of the platoon sergeant, squad leaders, and other key personnel (TO, leaders of attachments, and so on).
- 15) Stays abreast of the situation and goes where he is needed to supervise, leave tasks, and coordinate the platoon.
- 16) Requests more support for his platoon from the necessary command to perform its mission, if needed.
- 17) Assists the platoon sergeant in planning and coordinating the platoon's COM effort.
- 18) During planning, receives updated status reports from the platoon sergeant, squad leaders, or staff.
- 19) Reviews platoon requirements along with the tactical plan.
- 20) Develops a casualty evacuation plan.
- 21) During execution, positions himself where he can influence the most critical area for mission accomplishment normally with the main effort.
- 22) Commands through his squad leaders using the intent of the company and battalion commanders.
- a. Rifle Platoon Sergeant. This position is the senior NCO in the platoon and reports in succession of command. He helps and advises the platoon leader, and leads the platoon in the platoon leader's absence. He supervises the platoon's administration, inspection, and maintenance. He may prepare and issue paragraph 1 of the platoon OPMO. The rifle platoon sergeant is responsible for individual training. He must ensure that soldiers can perform their individual MOS tasks.

11) Organizes and controls the platoon COM and the unit SOP, platoon leader position, and MOUT-T factors.

12) Receives squad leaders' requests for weapons, water, and ammunition. Works with the company's line sergeant or TO to request resources. He also directs the sorting of supplies and mail.

13) Ensures the platoon leader and platoon sergeant and litter teams in moving casualties is his range.

14) Maintains platoon strength information, coordinates and forecasts the platoon's casualty reports (see forms 1120 and 1121), and receives and directs replacements.

15) Monitors the sorting, discipline, and health of platoon members.

16) Takes charge of non-completed elements in the platoon during tactical operations. This can include, but is not limited to, the following:

- Countering gunfire
- Security forces in withdrawal
- Support elements in route to attack.
- Security details in night attacks.

17) Coordinates and supervises unaccompanied platoon readiness operations.

18) Ensures that supplies are distributed and the platoon leader's guidance and direction.

19) Ensures that ammunition, supplies, and loads are properly and evenly distributed in tactical load-carrying operations and reorganization.

20) Ensures the casualty evacuation plan is complete and executed properly.

The following checklist outlines his duties and responsibilities during specific missions:

- a. Active during operations set at night:

11) Take action necessary to facilitate movement.
 12) Normally supervises rear security during movement.

13) Supervises, establishes and maintains security during halts.

14) Navigation - Know where you are!

15) Performs additional tasks as assigned by the platoon leader and assists him in every way possible. Keeps on contact with the platoon (especially during movement) and security.

F. Actions at Dropoff Area:

16) Directs positioning of rearward security initially established by the team squad or team.

17) Deploys everyone forward and sends up reports to Platoon Leader.

G. Actions in the Objective Area:

18) Assists in the occupation of the OOA.

19) Supervises, establishes and maintains security in the OOA.

20) Supervises the final cooperation of weapons and equipment in the OOA as per planning from platoon leader.

21) Assists the platoon leader in control and security.

22) Supervises the reorganization and reestablishment of team squad equipment. Issues accountability and status of personnel in situation, to include MIA and KIA's.

23) Performs additional tasks assigned by the platoon leader.

H. Actions in the Patrol Area:

24) Assists in the occupation of the patrol area.

25) Assists in supervising the intelligence and adjustment of the perimeter.

26) Maintains security in the patrol area.

27) Keep abreast and acting as a strength.

28) Supervises casualties and prisoner operations.

29) Periodically inspect the perimeter to ensure sectors of fire are assigned.

30) Issues assigned personnel status report and that equipment is maintained in a high state of readiness.

31) Assists in supplies, water, ammo and supervises their distribution.

32) Supervises the priority of work and ensuring its accomplishment:

- 1a) Security plan
- 1b) Maintenance plan.
- 1c) Hygiene plan.
- 1d) Feeding plan.
- 1e) Water plan.
- 1f) Rest plan.

33) Performs additional tasks assigned by the platoon leader and assists him in every way possible.

I. Rifle Squad Leader. This soldier is responsible for all that the rifle squad does or fails to do. He is a tactical leader and, as such, issues by example. He is that in the platoon chain of command. The rifle squad leader:

- 1) Controls the movement of his squad and its role and distribution of fire.
- 2) Trains his squad on the individual and collective tasks required to sustain combat effectiveness.
- 3) Manages the logistical and administrative needs of his squad. He requests and issues ammunition, water, rations, and special equipment.
- 4) Maintains accountability of his soldiers and equipment.
- 5) Completes casualty folder reports and reviews the security reports completed by squad members.
- 6) Directs the maintenance of the squad's weapons and equipment.
- 7) Inspects the condition of soldiers' weapons, clothing, and equipment.

- 171 Submit ACE report to PEO.
- 181 Designate targets for each gun.
- 191 Give additional fire commands as officers various circumstances.

- Whirling lines.
- Correcting mistakes or deviation as increases accuracy.
- Interrupted firing guns.
- Awarded salute to line.

- 110 Keep aware of location of assault elements or break elements and ground conditions.
- 111 Report as higher.

g. Team Leader: This soldier is a fighting leader who leads by personal example and holds the squad leader as responsible. He controls the movement of his line down and the pace and placement of fire by leading from the front and using the proper commands and signals. He maintains accountability at his soldiers and equipment. He ensures his soldiers maintain the unit standards in all areas. The following checklist outlines essential duties and responsibilities of team leaders during mission planning and execution. These duties/responsibilities may be performed by either team leader.

h. Actions During Planning and Preparation.

- 11) Marching Order
 - 1a) Assists in control of the squad.
 - 1b) Monitor squad during issue of the order.
- 12) SPOB's Prep
 - 1a) Unit check to time schedule.
 - 1b) Update team duties on marching order board.
 - 1c) Read team duties on marching order board.
 - 1d) Account team and supply items.
 - 1e) Turn in the gear to Supply Personnel.
 - 1f) Individual team and special equipment.
 - 1g) Perform all tasks given by the PL to the

Special Instructions Paragraph.

- 13) Operational Order
 - 1a) Monitor squad during issue of order.
 - 1b) Assist PL during preparation.
- P. Actions During Movement and at Halts.
 - 11) Take actions necessary to facilitate movement.
 - 1a) Suggests rifle security during movement.
 - 1b) Supervise, establish, and maintain security during halts.

12) Perform additional tasks as required by the PL and assist him in every way possible, particularly control and security.

1. Actions in the Objective Area

- 1a) Assist in the occupation of the OOB
- 1b) Assist in the supervision, establishment and maintenance of security
- 1c) Supervise the local preparation of SPOB, weapons, and equipment if the OOB is on the squad leader's guidance.
- 1d) Assist in control of personnel deserting and entering the OOB
- 1e) Reorganize perimeter after night party begins
- 1f) Maintain contact with higher headquarters.
- 1g) Take action if recon party, assist in the reorganization of personnel and redistribution of arms and equipment when accountability of all personnel and equipment is established.
- 1h) Organize PAF to his team
- 2) Perform additional tasks assigned by the PL
- d. Actions in the Patrol Team
 - 1a) Assist in occupation
 - 1b) Assist in supervising the establishment and adjustment of the perimeter
 - 1c) Assist in maintaining patrol team security.
 - 1a) Keep account and status of a minute.
 - 1b) Assist in team search weapons perimeter and range time preparation.
 - 1c) Inspect the perimeter to ensure cover and interlocking sectors of fire prepared team sector attack.
 - 1d) Report when the LP/CP is reached and alert
 - 1d) Report supplies, water, gas, ammo, and equipment status
 - 1e) Supervise the priority of work and ensure it is accomplished properly
 - 1f) Perform additional tasks assigned by the PL and assist him in every way possible.
 - 3. Actions During Line Up.
 - 1a) Assist in the preparation of SPOB and equipment
 - 1b) Ensure all personnel are knowledgeable of their tasks and the operation.

f. Fire Support Operations.

- 11) Assist in reconnaissance
- 12) Assist in general preparation
- 13) Control own gun

g. Platoon Defense. The platoon leader is the platoon sergeant (except for self-defense teams); he monitors the health and hygiene of the platoon. The platoon signaller--

- 11) Insure communication and weapons in fair condition under the control of the platoon sergeant.
- 12) Guide the platoon leader/signaller in field hygiene matters; generally checks the health and physical condition of platoon members.
- 13) Insure Class VIII medical supplies through the platoon signaller.
- 14) Regulate detailed quarters and supervision of the combat classes.
- 15) Control and issue tasks assigned by the platoon leader and platoon sergeant.

h. Platoon Reconnaissance Operator. The platoon RECON must have the use and care of the radio to include maintaining the operating frequency, the use of the MIC, and use to maintain the anti-interference frequency. Responsible for maintaining the establishing and maintaining communications with platoon headquarters and within the platoon.

i. Fire Support Team. The company has a fire support team attached from the DE FA battalion. This team provides each platoon with 4 immunities to company FO and the RECON.

NOTE: FO ready for a longer rifle company is assigned not affected.

l. Forward Observer. The FO acts as the eyes of the PL and company. He works for the platoon leader. The FO is responsible for the use of the platoon and is sent for self-adjusted indirect fire platoon. The FO must be familiar with the terrain and the platoon is operating in and the tactical situation. He must know the weapons, the

concept, and the unit's scheme of movement and priority of fires. The FO must--

- 1a) Insure the fire effectiveness of platoon activities and the fire support activities.
- 1b) Prepare and use situation data, quality, and terrain sketches.
- 1c) Call for and adjust fire missions.
- 1d) Operate as a team with the RECON.
- 1e) Select targets to insure the highest efficiency based on the company FO's, platoon leader's guidance and an analysis of METT-T factors.
- 1f) Select the and movement routes to get into the fire.
- 1g) Maintain communications as prescribed by the FM.
- 1h) Operate the digital message radio.
- 1i) Maintain the adjusted grid coordinates of his location.

2. Reconnaissance operator. The RECON is responsible for the use of the RECON, and maintains the FO with a communications equipment. If down, he must also observe the status of the FO for the platoon.

3-3. ASSUMPTION OF COMMAND.

a. Any platoon/queue member may have to take command if the unit is in emergency. When this occurs, the RECON is the first for command decisions may be necessary. During an assumption of command, situation permitting the following steps must be accomplished involving METT-T tasks and will necessarily accomplished in the following order:

- 1) Inform the unit of the command change using subordinate leaders and notify higher HQ
- 2) Check security.
- 3) Check communication systems

- 166 Assign your location.
- 167 Coordinate and check equipment.
- 168 Check personal status.
- 169 Issue orders if required.
- 170 Reorganize as needed and move out as soon as possible.

181 Maintain noise and light discipline.
182 If done in a patrol base, do not violate the activities of a patrol base, especially security.

4. SILENCE OF EVENTS.

183 Follow all procedures of patrol base activities when the need for a patrol base is appropriate.

184 Supervise and check on activities throughout the planning phase; use subordinate leaders.

185 Reorganize the unit according to MTT-T, but hold changes to the original unit organization to a minimum. Maintain unit integrity.

186 Status already received.

187 Issue warning orders.

188 Make a preliminary plan.

189 Move if necessary.

190 Make your reconnaissance (a) a minimum, a map record.

191 Make the necessary coordinations, i.e., fire support, special logistical support, updated information on enemy and friendly if not already done, air movement, etc.

192 Finalize your plan.

193 Issue your operation order (issue a PMOQ if the base will permit an operation order)

194 Supervise and conduct inspections and rehearsing techniques and be entitled to fix the situation and to maintain security.

195 Execute the mission.

CHAPTER TWO

OPERATIONS

This chapter provides procedures used by infantry platoons and squads. These procedures are used throughout the planning and execution phases of platoon and squad tactical operations. This section discusses mission briefing, briefening procedures, combat orders, and techniques for breaking a unit to fight. These topics address all combat operations. Their application requires time, and during time, leaders can plan and prepare in depth. With less time, they must rely on an previously rehearsed actions, battle drills, and standing operating procedures.

2-1. MISSION TACTICS

Mission tactics is the term used to describe the manner in which authority by a leader. Mission tactics places the responsibility of command, control, and communications in proper perspective by emphasizing the preparation of leaders. This emphasis on command, rather than control, provides for initiative, the acceptance of risk, and the rapid release of responsibility to the individuals. Mission tactics can be viewed as freedom of action for the leader to execute his mission in the way he sees fit, rather than being told how to do it. Mission tactics reinforced by the knowledge of the higher commander's intent and focused on a well defined establishes the necessary basis for individual leadership.

2. The philosophy of mission tactics exists throughout all levels of command. Leaders must be provided the maximum freedom in command and have imparted on them only the control necessary in synchronous mission

accomplishment. Sometimes leaders must issue specific instructions. Normally, this is necessary when the unit's actions must be synchronized with other actions. Mission leaders, as a general principle, recognize the every tactic available to the leader, but recognize that there is no substitute for the personal insight of command.

6. Selection of mission tactics requires individual responsibilities and organization. Initiating need is driven by the commander's intent, not merely by a desire for (preplanned) action. Leaders must be resourceful enough to adapt to situations as they are, not as they were organized to be.

7. Platoon and squad leaders also must effectively control their subordinates. Control includes command. Generally, increased control leads to more application of command. Not all control is top-down or authoritarian. For example, leader decisions in a form of control in that all leaders expect their subordinates to understand and apply the logic of decisions. Another common source of control is the use of guidance for operation overlays. While control and accountability-dependent, these are restrictive and must be recognized by the leader before implementation. Each control measure must have a specific purpose that contributes to mission accomplishment. If it does not pass this criteria test, it unnecessarily restricts freedom of action and should not be used.

8. Control is necessary to synchronize the actions of elements participating in an operation. The more complex the operation, the greater the amount of control. The challenge to leaders is to provide the critical amount of control required and still allow for decentralized decision making in each situation.

11) Mission tactics requires that leaders learn how to think rather than what to think. It recognizes that the subordinate is often the only person at the point of decision who can make an informed decision. Guided by the commander's intent, the situation, and the concept of the operation, the leader can make the right decision.

12) At platoon and squad level, useful forms of control include common doctrine, SOPs, concept of the operation, time, and general resources.

13) Doctrine, especially in the form of battle drills and unit SOPs that prescribe a way of performing a task, provides an element of control. By limiting the ways in which a task is performed to standards, battle drills and unit SOPs provide a common basis for action, allow for control, practiced responses, decrease the probability for confusion and loss of command, and reduce the number of decisions in the essential situation.

14) The leader exercises of the unit is also a form of control. The sergeant provides the daily fire decision and allows freedom of action. His task provides a basis for establishing the unit effort and includes all other actions (such as water management).

15) The concept of the operation identifies the task and sequencing criteria for the platoon and the description how a commander sees the execution of the operation. This allows the various possible elements of action for the subordinate's leader to think with regarding the unit effort. Leaders exercising the sequencing effort will have less freedom of action because they must lay their actions on the unit effort. The concept of the operation also details the control of some and other control subelements which must be synchronized and focused on the unit effort.

16) Leaders use time to control units or individuals by establishing specifically when a task should begin or be complete. Control using time is especially critical when the task or actions must be synchronized with other units or supporting elements.

101 Another source of control is the use of control measures. These include restrictions (e. subordinates write, fire concepts, set the use of operational graphics in overlays. While normally optional and situationally-dependent, control measures are potentially restrictive and must be followed by leaders being implementing them into their plans. To avoid the proper amount of control, each control measure must have a specific purpose that contributes to either accomplishment. If it does not have this goal, it unnecessarily restricts freedom of action and should not be used.

a. Platoon and squad leaders use specific tactics to accomplish the mission. They give orders and instructions that communicate the higher commander's intent, the leader's intent and purpose of the unit, and the concept of the operation, to include control measures. They also use tactical tactics to ensure that subordinate understand that they are expected to use initiative in setting decisions when the situation is so changed what it was expected to be.

2-3. TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES.

The troop-leading procedures are the dynamic process by which a commander executes a mission, plans it, and executes it. It should be as instinctive and familiar way of thinking for a platoon leader. The sequence of the individual TLP is not rigid. It is modified to meet the situation, situation, and available time. Some steps are done concurrently while others may go on continuously throughout the operation. The TLP are time savers; as such, the leader conducts them in the order that most effectively uses the available time.

a. Receive the Mission (RTM) It. A mission may be received in the form of direct or indirect order, order, operation order, or fragmentary order. At times, a leader may desire a change in mission, goal, or a change in the situation, when the OODG is reached, the leader should have his PD with him.

101 Order or Learning Mission is identified, orders to begin executing the unit's mission. The leader conducts an initial RTM-T analysis to determine the requirements for the mission order.

102 With the information available, the leader sets his time schedule by identifying the activities that must be done time-critical level to progress the unit's mission operation. These priorities define and establish a preliminary sequence of the information on the mission, enemy, terrain, and unit's time available. An initial reconnaissance may be a tactical necessity is conducted in a low time leader to quickly establish the time requirements for the mission. As time available has time defined by starting at the end time and working backward to the time it is the mission time goal. The a major time is usually the most critical time in the operation.

103 The leader must ensure that all subordinate leaders have sufficient time for their own planning needs. A general rule of thumb for instead of all levels of time can be used the amount of the available time for planning and issuance of the OODG. Time at 1 level the last of the available time for subordinate leaders to use for their planning and preparation. This a a initiative time element, which may require adjustment as the unit progresses.

- OODG, include situation.
- OODG, based on the plan, based on the leader's reconnaissance.
- OODG, establish OODG begin leader's reconnaissance.

- 0200, Issue warning order.
- 0300, confirm intelligence.
- 1900, call intelligence.
- 1800, see scale (day packet).
- 1830, Issue warning OPORD.
- 1850, Issue scale plan.
- 1900, conduct reconnaissance.
- 1930, confirm warning order, if required.
- 1950, receive OPORD.
- 0100, receive warning order, Issue warning order.

* Issue a Warning Order. STEP 3: do not wait for more information. Issue the final warning order possible with the information at hand and update it as needed with additional warning orders. The warning order lets units prepare for combat as soon as possible after being alerted of an upcoming mission. The normally involves a number of standard actions that should be addressed by SOP. The warning order should address those items not covered in the SOP that must be done in process for the mission. The specific contents for each warning order will vary, based upon the unique tactical situation.

4. Make a Tentative Plan. STEP 3: The leader develops an estimate of the situation in use as the basis for his tentative plan. The estimate is the military decision making process. It consists of the following steps:

(1) Mission Analysis.

- 01 Mission and intent of commander (see levels up).
- 02 Position and extent of immediate combat.
- 03 Purpose.
- 04 Assigned tasks.
- 05 Mission-critical tasks.
- 06 Constraints and limitations.
- 07 Rest of the situation.
- 08 Tentative time schedule.

(2) Estimate of the situation and determination of course of action.

- 09 Terrain and weather.
 - Terrain = COORD.
 - Weather = visibility, mobility, survivability.
- 10 Enemy situation and probable course of action.
 - Intentions.
 - Capabilities.
 - Most probable course of action (include all alternatives).
- 11 Friendly situation.
 - Troops available.
 - Terrain available.

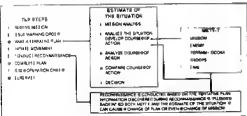


Figure 2-1. Tools of the tactician relationship.

- 11) Farsighted courses of action.
 - Determine decisive points and lines to focus combat power.
 - Determine if a result that must be achieved at the decisive point is essential to success.
 - Determine the purpose to be achieved by the main and supporting efforts. The supporting purpose must be clearly linked to the main effort's assigned purpose.
 - Determine the essential tasks for supporting units and supporting effort's official line defining these purposes.
 - Task-organize units to accomplish each effort that has been determined. If the line of advance when moving a unit to another position is critical, normally, planning do not cross-attach units.
 - Assign CD headquarters
 - Develop a general task organization by assigning all organic or attached units.
 - Establish needed resources that directly or indirectly support the accomplishment of the plan's assigned mission. (This may also include critical targets to be avoided).
 - Prepare a COA statement and sketch.
 - Repeat the process for subsequent courses of action. (Other COAs may begin with a different position because of time, or they may concentrate combat power at the same one using different units, weapons, tactics, and so forth).

12) Analysis of sources of action.

- 1a) Significant Factors.
- 1b) Weapons.

13) Capabilities of courses of action.

14) Decisions.

d. Integrate Resources. (STEP 4) This can be done by having a subordinate leader move the unit to an assembly area or attack position. The instructions for this move can be given in the marching order. The leader ensures that security is provided at the new location for all personnel.

e. Contact Reconnaissance. (STEP 5) Reconnaissance is a continuous process during the TLO. The tentative plan shows targets or RSM plans. Plan and contact reconnaissance is confirm or adjust the tentative plan. A thorough tentative plan helps the reconnaissance because specific RSM questions are to given to subordinates. If every tactical element the leader requires additional information, and at the same time, he must have the given information about the unit. These requirements provide the input for the unit RSM plan.

11) Prepare the plan. The leader determines:

- What are his information requirements?
- What are his security requirements?
- What are his priorities for these requirements?
- What assets are available to meet these requirements?
- How much time is available to collect the information or establish security?
- What is most critical first thus the target for his personal reconnaissance?
- To what unit to assign tasks to meet its own needs?

12) Issue the plan. The leader provides additional instructions to emphasize the assigned tasks to his subordinates. The amount of detail depends on the specific situation. A leader's reconnaissance that has several subordinate units involved requires very specific instructions. These may include the following:

- A specific timing for contact activities from subordinate units, such as the RSMLO.
- A specific line schedule for the reconnaissance leader, inspection, departure, and return times.
- Specific routes and directions.
- Specific equipment supplies.
- Likely contingency plans.

- The subject identification.
- Mistaken idea that the reconnaissance was done.
- Line up with the company.

131 Select the technique. The leader's reconnaissance is crucial to every operation. An attentive leader reconnaissance provides the required information without being detected by the enemy. The task of detection and its effect that the loss of supplies will have on the enemy must be weighed against the benefit of collecting the information. Generally, the closer the reconnaissance element is to the objective, the greater the risk of detection. The two primary techniques for conducting the leader's reconnaissance are:

132 Low-range observation/surveillance.

Reconnaissance personnel generally stay beyond small-arms range from the objective. This will usually be within the enemy's security positions line. Tentative OP sites are selected from a map reconnaissance and confirmed after the unit has occupied the OP. This technique is generally more effective during daylight hours. When possible, OPs should provide 360 degree coverage and any security positioning at night.

133 Over-range observation/surveillance. This

technique generally requires the reconnaissance personnel to keep inside the enemy's security positions and small-arms fire range. It depends on strength and effective use of available cover and concealment. Limited visibility may subject this technique. OPs are also designated for short-range observation.

134 Contact the reconnaissance. The leader's reconnaissance should be conducted as any reconnaissance team; only essential personnel should take part. The earlier this element is, the less likely the enemy will detect them. This should include a leader from each of the key elements. Additional tasks during the reconnaissance are:

- Testing communications is authorized.
- Making final decisions on routes, timing, signals, support/personnel positions, and submit responsibilities.
- Establishing security/surveillance on the objective area.

7. Complete the Plan. (STEP 5) The leader must be prepared to adjust his tentative plan based on the results of the reconnaissance. He may have to change COAs if the situation is not what he expected. In this case, one of the previously analyzed and identified COAs may be adjusted to quickly finalize the plan. Coordination conferences with all supporting elements, higher headquarters, and adjacent units. This, along with the recon, gives the leader the information he needs to report the tentative plan into a five-paragraph OPORD.

8. Issue the Order. (STEP 7) Promptly issue the order while viewing the avenues of approach/objective area. Make certain use of visual aids, sketches and terrain needed to avoid the attachment of the order. When the leader issues the tentative plan having the leader's reconnaissance, he issues a FRAG to finalize the plan prior to execution.

9. Supervise. (STEP 8) The team plan may tell it is to not engage until. Briefings, reports, inspections, and continuous coordination of plans must be able to supervise and adjust troop-leading processes. Debriefings and observations are not the same; debriefing focuses on the planning process, and observations focus on execution.

- 10. Inspect. During par-combat inspections, check:
 - Weapons and equipment.
 - Uniforms and equipment.
 - Mission-critical equipment.
 - Positions, sketches and understanding of the mission and their specific responsibilities.
 - Communications.
 - Reports and water.
 - Camouflage.

(2) Reconnoiter. They are essential to ensure accurate coordination and subordinate understanding. The reconnoiter should provide subordinate leaders sufficient detail in time to estimate and conduct reconnaissance of obstacles before receiving the OPORD. Reconnoiter conducted after the OPORD can then focus on mission specific tasks. Reconnoiter are conducted as any other training activities except the training area should be as much like the objective area as possible, including the same light and weather conditions. Post-ups of the objective should be used for these exercises. Reconnoiter include setting soldier and leader briefcases at individual tasks and using GPS tables or sketches to walk through the situation of the plan. These are followed by walk-through exercises and then full-speed, identified or live-line reconnoiter. The leader should establish the priority for reconnoiter based on the available time. The priority of reconnoiter, as CGA development, flows from the decisive point of operation. For example, actions on the objective, battle drills for maneuver, actions on enemy contact, special tasks, movement techniques, and others as required. Security must be maintained during the reconnoiter.

(3) Briefings. Subordinates should understand the leader right after the OPORD to ensure they understand their intentions. Briefings at the subordinate plan should also be conducted. These briefings are given collectively at a meeting of the entire group. Such a technique allows exchange of information, coordination among units, and rapid distribution of changes to the initial plan.

(4) Coordinate. The leader visits his subordinate and adjacent units to discuss their plans. The leader ensures all necessary connections are being made. These may include coordination of fire support and engineer activities, intelligence, logistics, movement, and other required actions.

(a) Any departures from the plan, both before and during the operation, are coordinated with the company commander.

(b) During execution, the company commander issues FRAGOs to modify or clarify the situation as the situation develops. He generally supervises and/or leads the critical actions.

2-5. COMBAT INTELLIGENCE.

1. General. Gathering information is one of the most important aspects of conducting patrolling operations. The following is a reminder to leaders as to what information to collect and how to report it.

2. Reporting. All information must be quickly, completely, and accurately reported. Use SALUTE report format for reporting and recording information.

SIZE	Seven enemy soldiers
ACTIVITY	Traveling SW
LOCATION	Crashed fuel junction, S120000
UNIFORMS	01 Fatigue with red sash going after an IED situation
TIME	210000 August
EQUIPMENT	Carrying one machine gun and one Rocket launcher

3. Field Sketching. When reporting information, it is desirable to include a sketch of the objective as often as possible. A sketch is a hand-drawn floor-plan map, map or picture of an area or route of travel, showing enough detail and having enough accuracy to provide useful tactical information.

7. Final sketch (see Figure 2-2)

a. SALUTE

Area: 20 km
Activity: Increasing positions at 0800 with
Location: South of Hill 404, M. (3313)
Unit/Activities: Field writers, no protection with
Time: 210000 Day
Equipment: 3 BROWNs, 2 tracked missile launchers, 3
receivers for track, 1 PWRP, 1 automatic weapon

b. Mines

1. Enemy ADA site approximately 400 meters long
East to West and 200 meters wide North to South.
Surrounded by single wire fence. Site has tear along SE
corner. Mined on all sides. Self Drive is good covered
and unimpeded route.

2. Bridge is concrete and steel, one lane, 80
meters in length.

3. Command bunker - logs and dirt, approx. 8 ft by
4 ft with radar dish.

4. SAM on track hills PT-701. Three launchers
rockets on rails. Firing at 0800G and 0810G at 0815G
pointed at 120 degree AZ at 45 degree angle. About 400 m in
length.

5. Same type missiles as #2, but pointed on 12 of
120 degrees with 70 degree angle.

6. BROWNs are 1000 m away. Vehicles started
every hour.

7. Trenches approx. 20 meters in length, oriented
toward south.

8. Fighting positions dug in with overhead cover
under construction.

9. One light machinegun.

10. Top-down LPDR rotated hourly, no cover seen at
main site. Mine trajectory good.

8. The amount of detail necessary in the sketch should
be limited to those things of military importance such as
terrain, buildings, natural or man-made obstacles, water
courses, or troop dispositions and locations.

9. The sketch must comply with the standard Army
symbols in AR 101-5-1. Notes should be used to explain
the drawing, but they should not clutter up the sketch.

10. Personnel weapons and equipment should not be used
on the sketch as it is a part of the "SALUTE" report (see
paragraph 7c.)

11. Captured documents. Prior to searching enemy mail and
installations for papers, mail, messages, orders, etc.,
personnel should check them for loose traps. Documents
are to be collected by the leader and turned in when he
makes his reports. The documents should be sorted as to
type and class of capture.

12. Prisoners. If prisoners are captured during a
patrolling operation, they should be treated and the Geneva
Convention and Articles by the G-3 rules:

- (a) identify
- (b) release
- (c) separate
- (d) safeguard
- (e) issue

13. Deserting. Immediately upon return from a mission,
the unit will be briefed with the standard NATO report
format.

11. Abbreviations. SP - Surveillance position, all - all task vehicle points.
 12. Map directions. Gift road running east to West of M. 1345th, not on map.



Figure 2-2. Field sketch.

2-3. GENERAL ORDER.

Warning orders give subordinate advance notice of operations that are to occur. This gives them time to prepare. The order should be brief, but complete. A sample format follows.

1. Situation: Brief description, for example, the enemy is departing and our battalion is attacking to the north. Attachments and detachments to the division or group.
2. Mission: Use the restated mission from the situation analysis.
3. General instructions
 - a. Chain of command (fill out by asset).
 - b. Special task or task organization within division or group. (Try not to violate unit integrity).
 - c. Bridges and equipment common to all (change from SOP) e.g., drop route, drop or pick up material.
 - d. Special weapons, ammunition, or equipment different from SOP; e.g., mines, attached charges, precision bombs, drop or pick up night observation devices.
 - e. Tentative time schedule. This is based on the basis of mission analysis. It includes at least:
 - (1) earliest time of surge.
 - (2) time and place of CP/PO and who will attend.
 - (3) Priority execution time.
 - (4) completion time and time to ad impacted SOP's.
 - (5) rehearsal time and actions to be rehearsed; e.g., actions at the objective.
 - f. Special tasks for bridge, searches, PAs, or other actions as time allows.
4. Additional general instructions as needed or by SOP.

4. Special Instructions.

a. To subordinate leaders:

- (1) Platoon sergeant.
- (2) Squad leader.
- (3) PATCO.
- (4) Radio.
- (5) Forward observer.
- (6) Miscellaneous.

b. To persons waiting in preparation of OPORD

OPFI.

a. As needed or by SOP.

3-4. OPERATION ORDER.

An Operation Order (OPORD) is a directive issued by a leader to his subordinates in order to effect the coordinated execution of a specific operation. A five-paragraph format (shown below) is used to organize the briefing to ensure completeness, and to help subordinate leaders understand and follow the order. Use a terrain sketch or sketch along with a map to attach the order. When possible, such as in the defense, give the order while observing the objective. The platoon/squad leader writes his OPORD orally off notes that follow the five-paragraph format.

OPORD FORMAT

TASK ORGANIZATION

states how the unit is organized to conduct the operation.

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces

The enemy situation is higher headquarters's OPORD (paragraph 1-4) is the basis for this, but the leader refines this to provide the detail required by his subordinates. The results of his enemy analysis is considered to determine the information included. This should include the enemy's composition, disposition, strength, recent activities, and capabilities. Also included is the enemy's most probable course of action.

(1) Weather and light (use general forecasts)

High	Forecast	Barometric
Low	Forecast	Sunset
Windspeed	Forecast	MOBT
Wind Direction	% Illumination	MOBT

(2) Terrain

OCQA

Note the effects on the enemy and friendly for lines (1) and (2) above.

(3) Identification of enemy forces (composition).

(4) Locations: Known and suspected (dispositions).

(5) Activity.

(6) Strength, morale, and capabilities/equipment.

(7) Probable course of action.

b. Briefly discuss:

This information is in paragraphs 10, 2 and 3 in higher Headquarters a OPORD.

- 10) Mission and concept of next higher unit to include higher leader's intent.
- 12) Location and planned actions of units on the left, right, front, and rear. State how each action fulfills your unit, particularly adjacent unit plans.
- 13) Units providing line support:
 - a) List the line support units available to your unit: Reserve, auxiliary, C&A, etc.
 - b) Needs to request support.
 - c) Location of units, if known.

c. Attachments and Detachments.

When not shown under "Unit Organization," list here, or in an annex, units attached or detached from the platoon, together with the effective times.

2. MISSION.

The unit's mission is a clear, concise statement of the task(s) to be accomplished by the unit and the purpose for doing it. The mission statement is derived from the situation analysis using the Guidance of the Situation. The mission is always stated twice, in full, and must stand alone without reference to any other documents except a map.

3. EXECUTION.

Intent:

Intent is the global vision that defines the purpose of an operation and the end state with respect to the relationship among the force, the enemy, and the terrain. Intent provides clarity to the overall operation and informs subordinates what operational actions are the most important; it also affords subordinates the ability to accomplish the mission in the absence of additional guidance, orders, or communications. Note: At tactical level and below, this subparagraph may be required and should only be used if there is a need to express the purpose of the operation in more detail than paragraph 2 permits.

a. Concept of the Operation:

This paragraph describes, in general terms, how the unit will accomplish its mission from start to finish. It should identify the most important task, designate key force on the decisive action (usually success on the objective), and identify the main effort. It identifies, designates the decisive point, time of maneuver or offensive technique, and any other significant factors or objectives. Refer to the operation overlay and concept sketch when doing so.

1) Maneuver:

The maneuver paragraph addresses, in detail, the mechanics of the operation. Specifically address all subordinate units and attachments by name, giving each the mission in the form of a task and purpose. The main effort unit is designated and all other subordinate actions must relate to the main effort. Actions on the objective will comprise

Notes: Use Standard forms and other publications, descriptions, and grid coordinates, where applicable, for items 3 - 6.

7. Refuse on every patient inhaled oxygen, do not flush, use nebulizer, nebulizer line, nebulizer flow, nebulizer control. Never administer nebulization via nebulizer other than Nebula Nebulizer or Unit 800.
8. Respiratory and identification instructions (other than SOP orders).
9. Air distribution measures: avoid high up, avoid SIPP.
10. Air control equipment: Passes 64-65, 70P P, ventilator rigging.
11. MOPP levels.
12. Triage PIPPs and operational procedures guidance.
13. Triage schedule (reference, backlogs, operations, equipment).
14. Priority identification requirements.
15. Securing measurements.
16. Reports.
17. Rules of Engagement.

4. PROVIDE SUPPORT.

This paragraph provides the principal requirements information required to qualify for work during the operation. Also include any special service support instructions and responsibilities that pertain to the operation.

a. Personnel.

- (1) SOPs in effect for each assigned assignment.
- (2) Current and proposed vaccine-schedule status.
- (3) Casualty and Responder assignment.
- (4) Special instructions to medical personnel.

b. Material and Services.

(1) Supply.

(a) Class II	Graders and
(b) Class VI	Assessment
(c) Class VII	HAZOP and other
	measures
(d) Class VIII	Medical
(e) Class IX	Medical
(f) Distribution Network	Supply parts

(2) Transportation.

(3) Services: Laundry, chemical.

(4) Maintenance: Weapons and Equipment.

c. Medical Evacuation: Method of requesting med and casualty, friendly and enemy, include priorities.

d. Personnel: Method of handling MOP and designation of the MOP collection point.

e. Miscellaneous.

- (1) Special Equipment
- (2) Covered Equipment

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

This paragraph where necessary and practical facilities and key leaders will be located during the operation.

a. Command

- (1) Location of the higher unit commander and OP.
- (2) Location of key personnel (PO, SMO) and OP during each phase of the operation.
- (3) Succession of Command.
- (4) Adjustments to the unit SOP instructions to PMSI.

b. Signal

- (1) SMO index in effect.
- (2) Methods of communication in priority.
- (3) Cryptotechnics and signals, to include air and hand signals.
- (4) Codebooks.
- (5) Challenge and password (behind friendly lines).
- (6) Number/destination (forward of friendly lines).
- (7) Warning Password.
- (8) Recognition signals (hand/air and day/night).
- (9) Special instructions to RTCs.

d. TIME AVAILABILITY

7. BOMB TIME HACK.

8. ABC FOR SUBSISTENCE.

9. The leader uses a preplanned order (FRAGO) to change an existing order. He normally uses the ODRD format but addresses only those elements that have changed. The leader should make his instructions short, simple, clear, and specific. The FRAGO a contact is used as PERT-T.

10. Annexes provide the instructions for conducting specific operations such as air assault, boat, and truck movement, stress operations, establishing patrol bases, and air/ground insertions, if they are so detailed that a unit SOP is insufficient for a particular situation. The format is the same as the five-paragraph ODRD.

11. An operation overlay is a tracing of graphic control measures on a map. It shows boundaries, unit positions, routes, objectives, and other essential features. It helps to clarify the operation order. Platoon/Company/Platoon overlays from the company operations map. Squad leaders transfer control measures on to their maps as needed. The subordinate a need for Night Unit graphics must be delayed against the risk of the enemy obtaining this information.

2-5. OPERATIONAL ORDER ANNOTATION.

Operations order annexes are necessary to complete the plan and to provide greater clarity and understanding during complex or critical aspects of the operation. Information that may be needed in those times include the: aerial resupply, fire support, truck movement, air assault, patrol

base, fuel tank, link up, and stream crossing orders. Announcements prepared only if the subject is not addressed (especially enough if the GPOCs briefly are discontinued) reveal the status. Announcements are always issued after the operation ends.

C. ALL RESULTS/MOVEMENT NAMES.

1. Situation.

a. Enemy situation

- (1) Enemy air capability
- (2) Enemy AAR capability
- (3) Includes in Weather 3 items, 10km range, MFR status, Ceiling/Visibility.

b. Friendly situation

- (1) Unit/air supporting operation
- (2) Friendly AAR status

2. Mission.

3. Execution.

a. Concept of operation

b. Support missions

- (1) Air Cavalry
- (2) Attack
- (3) Lift
- (4) OH-67
- (5) Reconnaissance

c. Coordinating instructions

- (1) LT
- (a) Name/Number
- (b) Coordinates
- (c) Load Time
- (d) Release Time
- (e) Partridge
- (f) Control
- (g) Landing Formation
- (h) Name/Number/Direction Direction

- (i) Alternate PI Name/Number
- (j) Aircraft Load/Direction
- (k) Parachute Point
- (l) Extractor Points

(2) LT

- (a) Name/Number
- (b) Coordinates
- (c) Hour
- (d) Partridge
- (e) Control
- (f) Landing Formation/Direction
- (g) Alt LT Name/Number
- (h) Extraction Plan
- (i) Extraction Alt

(3) Target File

- (a) Communications
- (b) Security Force
- (c) Flight Routes and Altitudes
- (d) AAR Criteria
- (e) Down Aircraft/Case
- (f) Special Instructions
- (g) Cross-LIST Coordinates
- (h) Aircraft Base
- (i) Aircraft Altitude
- (j) Aircraft Crash Time
- (k) Personnel Schedule/Time
- (l) Actions or Enemy Contact (Occurs and or the Ground)

4. Service Support.

- a. Forward Area Support/Signs Lights
- b. Class I, III, and V Supplies

5. Command and Signal.

- a. Command.
 - (1) Location of platoon leader/squad leader
 - (2) air and at landing site.

at landing sites:
12) Location of glitex support in site and

- a. Signal.
11) Background call signs and frequencies.
12) Shortened emergency code.
13) IFR Route LV
14) Resources/Number Combinations
15) Wing Abbreviation Plus Hub
16) Time Zone
17) Time Meter

B. AERIAL RESUPPLY AREA.

1. Situation.

- a. Enemy Forces (include weather)
b. Friendly Forces
c. Attachments and Detachments.

2. Mission.

3. Execution.

- a. Concept of operation
11) Receiver
12) Pilot
b. Tasks to Combat Units
11) Concepts and Control
12) Security
13) Handling
14) Recovery/Transport
c. Tasks to Combat Support Units
d. Coordinating Instructions
11) Flight Route
12) Signals
13) Designation
14) Communication checkpoints (CCP)
- Handling of CCP
- Support Base
15) Handling time CCP

12) Landing/Drop Zone

- 1a) Location.
- Primary
- Secondary
1b) Handling
- Near
- Far

13) Drop Location.

1a) Designation or assembly load alternate

1b) Code letter or BE/LI

1c) Length or BE in meters or diameter of LI

1d) Procedures for turning off BE/LI

1e) Direction, altitude, and site used.
- Example
- AB BE/LI

1f) Actions or enemy contact during assembly

1g) Mount Criteria (include call or BE/LI

1h) Actions at BE/LI

- Necessary

4. Service Support.

5. Command and Signal.

a. Command.

- 11) Location of glitex leader.
12) Location of glitex support.
13) Location of members not involved in assembly.

b. Signal.

- 11) Air to ground call signs and frequencies (primary call abbreviated).
12) Long range visual signals
13) Short range visual signals
14) Emergency procedures and signals
15) Air drop communication procedures
16) Code Words

C. CONTROL WORDS ANDX

1. Situation

- a. Enemy forces
- b. Friendly forces
- c. Attachments and detachments

2. Mission

3. Execution

a. Concept of operation.

- (1) Maneuver
- (2) Grip

b. Tasks to Combat Units

- (1) Teams
 - Security
 - Recon
 - Surveillance
 - CP/CPs
- (2) Individuals

c. Tasks to Combat Support Units

d. Coordinating instructions

- (1) Disruption plan.
- (2) Operations plan.
 - Security Plan.
 - Alarm Plan.
 - Priority of work.
 - Evaluation plan.

4. Service Support

- a. Water plan.
- b. Maintenance plan.
- c. Hygiene plan.
- d. Resupply plan.
- e. Rest plan.

5. Command and signal

a. Command

- (1) Location of platoon leader
- (2) Location of platoon sergeant
- (3) Location of platoon/section CP

d. Signal.

- (1) Call signs and frequencies.
- (2) Code words.
- (3) Emergency signals.

B. SMALL BOAT ANDX

1. Situation

a. Enemy forces.

- (1) Weather.
 - (a) Tide.
 - (b) Surf.
 - (c) Wind.
- (2) Terrain.

- (a) River width.
- (b) River depth.
- (c) Current.
- (d) Vegetation.

(3) Identification, location, activity and strength.

- b. Friendly forces unit furnishing support
- c. Attachments and detachments
- d. Organization for movement

2. Mission

3. Execution

a. Concept of operation.

- (1) Maneuver
- (2) Grip

b. Tasks to Combat Units

- (1) Security
 - (a) Load equipment
 - (b) Secure equipment
- (2) Designation of covering and sent

commanders.

- (a) Selection of navigator (a) and observer (a)

- a. Coordinating instructions.
 - 111 Formations and order of movement.
 - 121 Route and alternate route of return.
 - 131 Method of navigation.
 - 141 Actions on enemy contact.
 - 151 Rally points.
 - 161 Communication plan.
 - 171 Observation plan.
 - 181 Reverse plan.
 - 191 Time schedule.
 - 4. Service Support.
 - a. Station plan.
 - b. Area and ammunition.
 - c. Uniform and equipment.
 - 111 Method of distribution of supplies and life jackets.
 - 121 Disposition of food, medicine and life jackets upon abandonment.
 - 131 Method of handling dead and wounded.
 - 5. Command and Signal.
 - a. Command.
 - 111 Location of station leader.
 - 121 Location of station sergeant.
 - b. Signal.
 - 111 Signals to be used between and to boats.
 - 121 Code areas.
- E. STREAM CROSSING ASSET.**
- 1. Situation.
 - a. Enemy forces.
 - 111 Number.
 - 121 Terrain.
 - 131 River width.
 - 141 River depth.

- 141 Current.
 - 151 Vegetation.
 - 161 Obstacles.
 - 171 River location, identification, activity.
- 6. Friendly Forces.
 - a. Attachments and detachments
- 2. Evacuation**
- 1. Evacuation
 - a. Concept of operation.
 - 111 Manover
 - 121 Fires
 - b. Tasks to Combat Units
 - 111 Disengage.
 - 121 Retreat.
 - 131 Individual.
 - c. Tasks to Combat Support Units
 - d. Coordinating instructions
 - 111 Crossing procedure/attached area
 - 121 Security.
 - 131 Order of crossing.
 - 141 Actions on enemy contact.
 - 151 Disengage plan.
 - 161 Rallying points.
 - 171 Reverse plan.
 - 181 Time schedule.
 - 4. Service Support.
 - a. Command and Signal.
 - 111 Location of station leader.
 - 121 Location of station sergeant.
 - 131 Location of CP.
 - b. Signal.
 - 111 Emergency signals.
 - 121 Signals.

F. LINK UP UNIT.

1. Situation.

- a. Enemy forces
- b. Friendly forces
- c. Attachments and detachments

2. Mission.

3. Execution.

a. Concept of operation.

- (1) Overview
- (2) Plan

b. Tasks to Combat Units

- (1) Security Tasks
- (2) Surveillance Tasks
- (3) Linkup element

c. Tasks to Combat Support Units

d. Coordinating instructions.

- (1) Time of link up.
- (2) Location of link up site (primary and alternate).

- (3) Rally points.
- (4) Actions upon enemy contact.
- (5) Actions at the link up site.
- (6) Actions following link up.
- (7) Withdrawals.
- (8) Restrictive Fire Lines.
- (9) Time Schedule.

4. Service Support.

5. Command and Signal.

a. Command.

- (1) Location of platoon leader and platoon sergeant.
- (2) Location of platoon headquarters.

b. Signal.

- (1) Call signs and frequencies.

- (2) Signals and code words.
- (a) Near recognition signal
- (b) Near recognition signal
- (c) Link up complete
- (3) Positive authentication interval
- (4) Security codes (signals)
- (5) Emergency signals
- (6) Abort criteria and signals

G. BUCK UNIT.

1. Situation.

- a. Enemy forces
- b. Friendly forces
- c. Attachments and detachments

2. Mission.

3. Execution.

a. Concept of operation.

- (1) Maneuver
- (2) Plan

b. Tasks to Combat Units

c. Tasks to Combat Support Units

d. Coordinating instructions

- (1) Time of departure and return
- (2) Loading plan and order of movement
- (3) Route (primary and alternate)
- (4) Fuel Source
- (5) Actions on enemy contact (vehicle exhaust

during movement, loading, and unloading)- (6) Actions at the unloading point
- (7) Withdrawals
- (8) Vehicle speed, separation, and recovery

(1a)

- (1) Break vehicle instructions

4. Service Support.

3. Command and Signal:

- a. Command.
- b. Location of platoon leader and platoon sergeant.
- c. Signal:
 - (1) Radio call signs and frequencies
 - (2) Color code

The following list includes doctrinally correct and frequently used positional tasks which form the basis of the platoon statement.

- A. **CONTAIN:** To stop, hold or surround the forces of the enemy so as to cause the enemy to center activity on a given area and to prevent him withdrawing any part of his forces for use elsewhere.
- B. **BREACHING:** The employment of any means to secure a passage through an enemy obstacle or fortification.
- C. **ATTENTION DEFLECT:** The application in effectiveness of a force caused by loss of personnel and material. This task must be qualified authoritatively.
- D. **INTEFERE:** To prevent or hinder by any means, enemy use of any area or route.
- E. **SECURE:** To gain possession of a position or terrain feature with or without force, and to make such disposition as will prevent, as far as possible, its occupation or use by enemy action.
- F. **BLOCK:** To deny the enemy access to a given area or to prevent enemy movement in a given direction. It may or may not require force. Units may have to remain in force and accept decisive engagements.

G. **CHALLENGE:** To extract operations to a narrow zone by use of existing or constructed obstacles or by direct or indirect fire.

H. **HIDE:** Actions taken to prevent the enemy from seeing any part of his forces from a specific location and/or a specific period of time by hiding or surrounding areas to prevent their withdrawal for use elsewhere.

I. **SUPPORT:** Direct or indirect fire, anti-aircraft countermeasures (ACM), or units brought to bear on enemy personnel, weapons, or equipment to prevent effective use of friendly forces.

J. **DELAY:** To waste enemy time, inflict serious damage on the enemy and avoid decisive engagement.

K. **DEFEND:** To prevent or hinder enemy forces occupation of, or benefit from, areas or objects.

L. **DISRUPT:** To physically disable the majority of an enemy force ability or will to execute combat plans.

M. **DISRUPT:** To counter the enemy's initiative and apprehensions to prevent his force accomplishing overwhelming combat plans.

N. **RETAIN:** To occupy and hold terrain or a sector free of enemy occupation or use.

O. **SUPPORT:** To aid, equip, protect, or sustain any other force.

P. **CLEAR:** To destroy or force the withdrawal of all enemy forces, and destruction of any obstacles which may interfere with subsequent operations.

- 131 Friend lines.
- 132 Fire support coordination measures.
- 133 Priority targets list T&D no.1
- 134 M&I
- 135 SPL
- 136 No fire areas
- 137 Fire-coordinated authorization.

d. Communication (includes primary and alternate means, emergency signals, and base calls and signals).

3-10. COORDINATION WITH FORWARD UNIT. A platoon/squad that requires fast movement through a friendly forward unit must coordinate with that unit's commander for a route and orderly passage. If no time and signal has been established for coordination with the forward unit, the platoon/squad leader should not move and signal when he coordinates with the SS. He must talk with someone at the forward unit who has the authority to permit that unit to permit the platoon/squad leader's passage. Coordination details & necessary exchange of information:

- a. Identification (company and your unit).
- b. Size of platoon/squad.
- c. Time and place of departure and return.
- d. Location of all weapons positions, M&I and attacking units.
- e. General area of operation.
- f. Information on terrain and vegetation.
- g. Areas of suspected enemy positions or obstacles.
- h. Suspected enemy ambush sites.
- i. Suspect enemy activity.
- j. Detailed information on friendly positions (e.g., how many squads, M&I).
- k. Base and alternate sign.
- l. Support the unit has within. How long and what can they do.

- 138 Fire support.
- 139 Letter frame.
- 140 Re-identified signals and sign.
- 141 Orders.
- 142 Communications.
- 143 Reaction units.
- 144 Other.

- 1. Call sign and frequencies and exchange of VHF/UHF cryptic variations.
- 2. Parachute sign.
- 3. Challenge and response, running password, number combination forward of M&I.
- 4. Emergency signals and code words.
- 5. If the unit is believed, state the information to the receiving unit.
- 6. Recognition signals.

3-11. ADJACENT UNIT COORDINATION. Immediately after the operation order or mission briefing, the platoon/squad leader should check with other platoon/squad leaders who will be operating in the same areas. If the adjutant/leader in command of any other unit operating in his area, he should check with the SS during the operations coordination. The SS may help arrange this coordination if necessary. The platoon/squad leaders should exchange the following information with those units operating in the same area:

- a. Identification of the unit.
- b. Mission and size of unit.
- c. Planned times and points of departure and return.
- d. Route(s).
- e. Fire support (M&I). General support.
- f. Frequency and call sign and exchange of VHF/UHF cryptic variations.
- g. Challenge and response, running password, and number combination.

- h. Synoptic picture.
- i. Any information that the unit may have about the enemy.
- j. Reception signals.

2-12. **GENERAL AREA COORDINATION.** This coordination is conducted with the liaison leader/combat commander to facilitate the unit's safe egress, and effective use of rehearsal areas prior to its mission.

- a. Identification of your unit.
- b. Mission.
- c. Terrain vital to objective area.
- d. Security at the area.
- e. Availability of equipment.
- f. Use of signals, pyrotechnics, live ammunition.
- g. Backups available.
- h. Time the area is available (preferably when light conditions closely approximate expected light conditions for egress).
- i. Transportation.
- j. Coordination with other units using area.

2-13. **REY AVIATION COORDINATION.** This coordination is conducted with the liaison leader/combat commander and/or B3 AF to facilitate the timely, detailed and effective use of aviation assets as they apply to your tactical mission.

- 1. Enemy Forces.
 - a. Location, activity, probable course of action, enemy air defense.
 - b. Weather, visibility time, POC, any delay for mission.
- 2. Friendly Forces. Name, mission, activity, site of egress/carrier/ready.
- 3. Mission.
 - a. Location.
 - b. Execution.

A. Concept of the operation: Overview of what requesting unit wants to accomplish with the air assault/air movement.

B. Tasks to Combat Units.

- 101 Infantry
- 102 Attack Aviation

C. Tasks to Combat Support Units.

- 101 Artillery
- 102 Aviation Light

D. Coordinating Instructions

LI OPERATIONS

- 101 Direction of landing.
- 102 Time of landing/flight direction.
- 103 Location of PE/Alt LI.
- 104 Landing procedure.
- 105 Marking of LI (signal, smoke, SM, light).
- 106 Light code (signal, IMP, ACP, RPI).
- 107 Location PE/Carpet/LI.
- 108 Code words, PE secure prior to landing; PI clear (last term, last signal, alt LI, alt PE, smoke, alt LI) Name of PE/Alt PE.
- 109 TAC aircraft/ship.
- 110 Number of personnel for entire task.
- 111 Equipment carried by individuals.
- 112 Marking of key leaders.
- 113 Area's Criteria (PI/Carpet/LI)
- LI OPERATIONS**
- 114 Direction of landing.
- 115 Pulse instructions planned, locations.
- 116 Time of landing, RI time
- 117 Location of LI, Alt LI.
- 118 Marking of LI (signal, smoke, SM, light).
- 119 Formation at landing.
- 120 Code words, LI name, Alt LI name

1201 TAC air/auxiliary prep, time support coordination.

1201 Backup LD or not.

1. Service Support

t. Number of aircraft per lift and number of

lifts.

g. Refuel/ready during mission or not.

for weapons carried by unit personnel.

h. Egress plan.

5. Contact and Signal

t. Frequencies, call signs and code words.

tactical commander, and TIF assault task force commander.

h. Location of air mission commander, ground

9-14. **VEHICULAR MOVEMENT COORDINATION.** This is coordinated with the supporting unit through the mission sergeant/first sergeant to facilitate the objective, detailed, and efficient use of vehicular support and/or assets.

a. Identification of the unit.

t. Supporting unit identification.

t. Route and type of vehicles and tactical preparation.

a. Entrusting unit.

a. Departure/leaving time.

t. Preparation of vehicles for movement.

1g. Driver responsibilities.

1h. Mission/Asset responsibilities.

1i. Special equipment/equipment required.

g. Availability of vehicles for preparation/rehearsal/inspection time and location.

h. Route.

1g. Primary

1h. Alternate

1i. Checkpoints

t. Contact points.

1g. Primary

1h. Alternate

h. March interval/pace.

h. Communications frequencies, call signs, contact.

i. Emergency procedures and signals.

9-15. **FRAGMENTARY ORDER.**

A Fragmentary Order (FRAGO) provides timely changes to existing orders. The format for a FRAGO is the inverse of a GPOD format. Only those items that have changed since the last GPOD should be discussed. If a significant change to the mission occurs or the mission is cancelled, a complete GPOD may be issued rather than a FRAGO.

CHAPTER THREE

FIRE SUPPORT

Section E. Indirect Fire

E-1. In order to be effective, fire support must be thoroughly planned and coordinated prior to actually undertaking a patrolling mission. Fires should be planned not only on the objective, but also along the route, at place points, etc., so they may be used if the unit encounters unexpected trouble or, under emergency conditions, requires reorientation.

E-2. CAPABILITIES.

Weapon	100	81	60	4.2	3.5	2.1	1.6	1.1	0.8
Accuracy	Good	Good	Good	Good	Good	Good	Good	Good	Good
Range	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000
Rate of Fire	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000	1000
Effect	High	High	High	High	High	High	High	High	High
Portability	High	High	High	High	High	High	High	High	High
Reliability	High	High	High	High	High	High	High	High	High
Cost	High	High	High	High	High	High	High	High	High

Figure E-1. Indirect Fire Capabilities

3-3. SYMBOLS

a. Target Symbols. Standard symbols are used in the preparation of maps, charts, and overlays to identify targets by type (airborne, linear, rectangular, circular, etc), target reference (grid). These symbols are shown below.

(1) Standard Target. A standard target normally is a target area 200 meters (66) in size. Minimum accuracy of the target location on the target list is a one-half or eight-eight grid (Figure 3-2). The symbol for a standard target is a cross with relevant information and the following to show it:



Figure 3-2. Standard Target.

(2) Linear Target. A linear target is one that is more than 200 meters but less than 600 meters long (e.g., a branch line). Targets longer than 600 meters will require additional fire support assets or to split into multiple targets. A linear target is designated in the target list (Figure 3-3) by two grids or a center grid, length, and altitude.



Figure 3-3. Linear Target.

(3) Rectangular Target. A rectangular target is one that is wider and longer than 200 meters (e.g., a landing strip or city block). It is designated on the target list by four grids or a center grid, length, width, and altitude (Figure 3-4).



Figure 3-4. Rectangular Target.

(4) Circular Target. A circular target is one that is in a circular pattern or is vague as to exact composition. It is designated by center grid and radius (except enemy command center) (Figure 3-5).



Figure 3-5. Circular Target.

(5) First Protective Fire (FPF). The symbol for first protective fire is similar to that for a linear target. It includes the target number and FPF/unit to fire (Figure 3-6).



Figure 3-6. FPF.

1d) Target Reference Point. Maneuver units use a Target Reference Point (TRP) to orient fixed fire weapons systems (e.g., tube-launched, optically tracked, wire-guided missile (TOW)) and bombs. The system is the same as that for a standard target with a target number and TRP number. TRPs are to be included in target lists (Figure 3-7).



Figure 3-7. TRP.

5. Two or more targets on which fire is desired simultaneously comprise a group of targets, i.e., AIG (Figure 3-8). Each target within the group has a target number for quick reference in order for the unit leader to request fire on single targets, i.e., AIGIG (Figure 3-9).



Figure 3-8. Group of Targets.

6. A series of targets consists of a number of targets and/or group of targets planned as a series in predetermined sequence in support of a maneuver phase. (TRP) An addition to the lowest level action authorized to form and designate a series of targets. This is normally planned to support a limited attack, final assault, counter-attack, or phased withdrawal. This is graphically depicted by circling the targets and/or group of targets and assigning a nickname of code name as shown in Figure 3-7.



Figure 3-9. Series of Targets.

3-8. TGT LIST AND OVERLAY

a. The base TGT list and overlay (Figure 3-10) is a collection of data pertaining to TGT's planned to support an operation. The TGT list includes the designation, location, and guidance needed for each TGT. It may also include information concerning the TGT such as altitude, size, attitude, and source. Fires should be planned to the left, right and ahead the objective to cut off escape and reinforcement routes.

TGT LIST & TGT OVERLAY SHEET									
Company, 1st Bn, 1st AF									
Date: 10/10/70									
Scale: 1:50,000									
TGT No.	Designation	Grid	Altitude	Source	Remarks	Priority	Weapon	Remarks	Remarks
1	Target 1	100000	1000	Visual	Target 1	High	105mm		
2	Target 2	100000	1000	Visual	Target 2	High	105mm		
3	Target 3	100000	1000	Visual	Target 3	High	105mm		
4	Target 4	100000	1000	Visual	Target 4	High	105mm		
5	Target 5	100000	1000	Visual	Target 5	High	105mm		
6	Target 6	100000	1000	Visual	Target 6	High	105mm		
7	Target 7	100000	1000	Visual	Target 7	High	105mm		
8	Target 8	100000	1000	Visual	Target 8	High	105mm		
9	Target 9	100000	1000	Visual	Target 9	High	105mm		
10	Target 10	100000	1000	Visual	Target 10	High	105mm		

Figure 3-10. Flat Target List Worksheet.

d. The Operations Overlay shows the scheme of maneuver that will be used to seize objective Bravo.

e. The First Target Overlay (Figure 3-11) shows the lines planned to the left, right, or the objective to cut off escape and reinforcement routes. This overlay is superimposed on the Operations Overlay. First Target Overlays should be laid as quickly as possible for tactical and controlling actions.

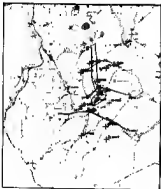


Figure 3-11. First Target Overlay.

3-5. CALL FOR FIRE. When a reconnaissance team has an FO, the platoon leader sends the call-for-fire to either the FIST officer (usually located with the company headquarters) or the Fire Direction Center (FDC) of the company's mortar. A call-for-fire has three parts consisting of six elements and is transmitted with a brief and repeated after each part. The three parts are as follows:

- a. Observer identification and warning order (including adjustment of firing methods, I.M., adjust time/line for effect (A/T/P/L).
- b. Target location.
- c. Description of target, method of engagement, and method of fire and control.

3-6. TARGET LOCATION. The three methods for locating targets are 'grid,' 'polar,' and 'azimuth from a known point.' Only 'polar' and 'azimuth' are approved to the FDC. If the observer does not use either 'polar' or 'azimuth,' then the FDC knows that the grid method is being used. The word 'grid' is not used in the warning order.

a. Grid Method. In a grid system, six-digit grids normally are used. The direction from the observer to the target (DT) is normally sent at the end of the initial call for fire, since it is not needed by the FDC to locate the target. Example:

121 '127, THIS IS 171, SOLVER FIRE, OVER.'

121 'GRID 180512, OVER.'

121 'INVENTORY PLATOON IN THE OPEN, 1CM IN GRID, OVER.'

b. Polar-Azimuth Method. This method specifies that the observer and the FDC know the observer's exact location. The observer determines the direction (to the nearest 100 mil) of the observer-target (DT) line and the distance (to the nearest 500 meters) from his position to the target. A vertical azimuth (to the nearest 5 meters) tells the FDC how far the target is located above (or below) the observer's location. Example:

121 '220, THIS IS 121, FIRE FOR EFFECT POLAR, OVER.'

1c) When necessary, the observer may use Air Hand and Rings as a measuring device when binoculars are not available, as shown in figure 3-13.



NOTE: HAND MUST BE FULLY EXTENDED.

Figure 3-13. Hand PSI Determination.

1d) The reticle in M7 field glasses are as shown in figure 3-14. Horizontal line marks are in 10 mil increments.



Figure 3-14. M7 Field Glasses Reticle.

3-8. CREEPING FIRE CHANGES CLOSURE

a. The technique of creeping fire to a definite target may ensure troop safety.

b. If artillery/infantry fires will impact within 400 meters of friendly-troops, the observer must call the FDC by transmitting BANGS CLOSURE.

c. If creeping method of adjustment is used exclusively during danger zone situations, the observer should make range changes by creeping the rounds in the target using corrections of 100 meters or less, instead of making larger range corrections.

d. The observer must keep in mind the position of all nearby friendly troops to ensure that a correction will not cause rounds to endanger them.

e. All weapons that will fire for at least one round in the adjustment.

SECTION II. Close Air Support (CAS)

3-8. There are two types of close air support requests, planned and immediate. Planned requests are processed by the Army only to ensure Air approval. Immediate requests may be initiated at any level and processed by the Battalion S-3 FDC, and Air Liaison Officer. A determination will be made as to how appropriate the target is for a close air support mission. If the target is determined to be appropriate, the Air Liaison Officer will submit an immediate close air support request over Air Force radio. If the request is approved by the Air Support Operations Center (ASOC), an aircraft will be alerted to attack the target. CAS may be used for many purposes, i.e., to divert enemy attention to assist a unit in breaking contact or to attack a target of opportunity. The following elements must be included when requesting immediate CAS:

- Observer identification.
- Warning Order (WFO) (REQUEST CLOSURE TIME).
- Target location (Grid).
- Target description.

Target description. Target description includes, as a minimum, type and number of aircraft, altitude or movement, is it in a cloud or in over target, desired result on target (immediate/destroyed) and time on target, if applicable.

3-10. COMMUNICATIONS.

a. Communications is the key to requesting and directing CAS. Immediate CAS requests must be relayed on the Air Force Long Range High-Frequency (LRF) net which is normally accomplished through the ground or Air PAC. Only F-16, A-1J, A-7 and A-10 aircraft have the necessary capability. Another fighter aircraft can be inoperative which requires LRF action or a relay through an airborne PAC or A-10 aircraft.

b. A prominent landmark or area should be used when directing a CAS attack on a target. Use the stick method (use of the aircraft as if a stick) to get the pilots eyes where you want them. Example: The white area is at your 2 o'clock position. Once the pilot identifies the area or landmark, describe the target in terms of direction and distance. Example: The target is 200 meters north of the area. Detail the unit of measurement with the pilot. E.g. "Let's call the side of the river 50 meters."

c. Once the pilot correctly identifies the target, you must give his permission to attack it by saying "Cleared hot." "Cleared hot" must be given for each successive pass or the pilot will not drop his ordnance. To stop the attack for any reason you must say "Stop-Stop-Stop." Never fill translations brief, clear and simple.

3-11. METHODS OF TARGET IDENTIFICATION.

a. Target coordinates are usually given in six digit UTM for visual sighting however, if using beacon tones, eight digit coordinates must be available for the tones and target.

b. Smoke or MP from mortar/artillery and pinpoint targets may be used to identify both targets and friendly positions, but you must ensure pilot knows which is which. Colored smoke may be used to mark friendly positions and indicate direction of attack, however they are very hard to see from fighter aircraft.

c. Prominent landmarks or terrain features may be used in directing the pilot to the general area. Dry runs may be used to positively identify the target, but must be kept to a minimum to maintain the element of surprise and aircraft survivability.

CHAPTER FOUR

MOVEMENT, LEADS AND PLATOONS

4-1. General. To survive on the battlefield, stealth, dispersion, security and simplicity must be enhanced in all tactical movements. The leader must be skilled in all movement techniques and principles.

a. Definition of Formations. Formations are arrangements of elements and soldiers in relation to each other. Squads use formations for control based on their ability of the leader of METT. Leaders are up front in formations. This allows the first base leader to lead by example, "Follow me and do as I do." All soldiers in the team must be able to see their leader.

b. Techniques. A movement technique is the manner a unit uses to traverse terrain. There are three movement techniques: traveling, traveling overwatch, and bounding overwatch. The selection of a movement technique is based on the likelihood of enemy contact and the need for speed. Factors to consider for each technique are control, dispersion, speed, and security. Movement techniques are not fixed formations. They refer to the distances between soldiers, bases, and squads that vary based on situation, enemy, terrain, visibility, and any other factor that affects control. Soldiers must be able to see the first base leader. The platoon leader should be able to see his lead squad leader. Leaders control movement with command-based signals. They use radios only when needed. Any of the three movement techniques (traveling, traveling overwatch, bounding overwatch) can be used with any formation.

c. Markings.

(1) Units move on designated routes or arrive at

specified location and ensure maximum accountability of all participating personnel.

(2) Unit cover movement location and technique covered by the leader brief or METTY.

(3) Leaders receive extended training 200m and utilize terrain cover unless METTY dictates otherwise.

(4) Unit will maintain 360 degree security and 100% alert during movement.

(5) Unit will maintain 360 degree security and a minimum of 200 meter threat or METTY during halts.

(6) If possible with the enemy in view, it is made with the greatest silence possible (litter team).

(7) Unit will maintain or more than 100 personnel (subjective).

(8) Control measures are used during movement (head count, pass lines, rally points, rest lines, etc.).

d. Procedures:

(1) Have one officer per company. Preparation and plan are sufficient if a patrol threat and its objective are known well, however cover is better if poor navigation than to use it for the commander and guides are used. Additionally, consider all risks to navigation, fire, order, STAND, weather, sound, and distance from the PL.

(2) Avoid Obstacles. Patrol must move by itself and exploit the cover and concealment of the terrain. Move when visibility is reduced such as during darkness, fog, snow, or rain. Use rough, rocky, or heavily vegetated terrain to help hide from the enemy. Equipit knows movement is easy detection capabilities and plan movements when other conditions may divert PL attention.

(3) Maintain constant security. Even with well thought plan for movement, the patrol must stay both active and passive security measures at all times. Give one or multiple accountability to security elements, at regular intervals, at patrol bases, and most importantly in the relative zone.

(4) Plan for use of support fire. Plan for line support, artillery, mortar, air, attack helicopters, cover, and other assets if you think you may need it during movement. Having a fire plan gives you a tool to help you move or navigate. For example, you use the direction by lighting flares or known points along the route. You use sound detection by listening for enemy noise when you are in cover or concealed positions. You use your fire plan to divert the enemy's attention away from your area through which the patrol is moving. You have fire directed and ready to engage the threat in the zone.

(5) The enemy detection distances which of the three movement techniques will be used. When control is not likely, TRAVELING IN PLACE = TRAVELING IN POSITION, SLOWLY = SLOWLY IN POSITION. Sound/visibility/distance and the TRAVELING approach because they are usually short range and control is possible.

(6) If more terrain, then the enemy is discovered, then enemy position is possible, how far the fire will be directed and direction with the other two. Avoid noise for the movement.

(7) PL has sufficient visual contact. But the distance between them is such that the enemy cannot see them unless they are in contact or close. PL must be aware their formation is necessary to gain better observation of the terrain. Although visibility is poor, PL must maintain contact or PL must know the distance their team leader. Terrain or weather may make it necessary to modify the order. Extreme situations may require the use of a signal plan.

(8) The lead group must secure the front. It should be the one last position to navigate and provide forward security for the patrol while moving. For a fire movement, the PL may order the last group or patrol the line back of the last group. The PL may order or move in the rear if changed with their security.

04 Movement of a column in the same as in any other operation.

051 Vary movement techniques to meet the changing situation. If you need to get the lead squad into bounding overwatch get them from the patrol 4-1 approach the lead squad, to it. This may be good for crossing a large open area.

052 Leaders, except fire team leaders, move within the formation where they can best control the situation and do their job. They can shift their ear around. For instance, a PL may want to have the observer walk over him so that he can get an accurate lighting report quickly.

4. Movement Techniques.

01 The traveling is used when enemy contact is not likely and when sight is necessary.

02 The traveling overwatch is used when enemy contact is possible.

03 The bounding overwatch is used when enemy contact is expected or crossing a danger area.

Movement Technique	When Used	Characteristics			
		Control	Speed	Flexibility	Security
Traveling	Enemy not seen	Good	Fast	Low	Good
Traveling Overwatch	Enemy possible	Good	Fast	Medium	Good
Bounding Overwatch	Enemy expected	Good	Fast	High	Good

Figure 4-1. Movement techniques, 0001, and characteristics.

1. Traveling. In the traveling technique, the distance between individuals is about 10 meters with 30 meters between squads. It has the following characteristics:

01 More control than traveling overwatch but less than bounding overwatch.

02 Minimum dispersion.

03 Minimum speed.

04 Minimum security forward, but some security may be equal by speed.

g. Bounding Overwatch. The bounding overwatch technique is the basic movement technique.

01 The distance between individual soldiers is about 30 meters, and the distance between fire teams is about 60 meters.

02 In bounding overwatch, the lead squad must be far enough ahead at the start of the column to detect or engage the enemy before the enemy observes or



Figure 4-2. Bounding overwatch.

lines on the rear body. However, it can be close enough to be obscured by the streamer's own lines. This is normally between 50 to 100 meters, depending on terrain, vegetation, and light and weather conditions.

(2) In a column formation, only the lead squad element uses the travelling overwatch however, if greater dispersion is desired, all squads may use it.

(4) In other formations, all squads use traveling overwatch unless the platoon leader decides not to.

(5) Travelling overwatch has the following characteristics:

- (a) Good control.
- (b) Good discipline.
- (c) Good speed.
- (d) Good security forward.



Figure 4-3. Squad travelling overwatch.

4. Bounding Overwatch.

(1) In the bounding overwatch technique, the distance between squads remains approximately 30 meters. The distance between teams and squads varies.

(2) The squad or platoon has a bounding element (not an overwatch element). The bounding element moves while the overwatch element occupies an overwatch position that covers the route of the bounding element by fire. Each bound is within supporting range of the overwatch element.

(3) The length of a bound depends on the terrain, visibility, and control.

(4) Before a bound, the leader gives the following instructions to his subordinate:

- (a) Direction of location (if known) of the enemy.
 - (b) Position of overwatch elements.
 - (c) Bound overwatch position.
 - (d) Route of the bounding element.
 - (e) What to do after the bounding element reaches the next position.
 - (f) How the squads receive follow-on orders.
- (5) The characteristics of bounding overwatch are:
- (a) Maximum control.
 - (b) Maximum dispersion.
 - (c) Maximum speed.
 - (d) Maximum security.

1. Squad Bounding Overwatch.

(1) When using squad bounding overwatch, the line team moves forward while the other team overwatches.

Attached weapons are with the overwatch element. If the bounding team makes contact, the overwatch team supports the bounding team with fire and movement.

(2) Teams can bound successively or alternately. Successive bounds provide more control (see Figure 4-4). Alternate bounds can be executed faster than successive bounds. Use the alternate bounds method when the overwatch element can observe the bounding element pass to its flank and advance to a new position.

(3) The team moves as a team if there is good cover and concealment. If there is not good cover, the soldiers move singly or in pairs by short rushes from cover to cover or by crawling (Figure 4-4).



Figure 4-4. Squad Bounding Overwatch Alternate Bounds.

J. Platoon Bounding Overwatch.

(1) Method One. When platoons use bounding overwatch, one squad bounds and the squad overwatched the third squad waits orders. Forward observers stay with the overwatching squad to call for fire. Platoon leaders normally stay with the overwatching squad who use machine guns and attached weapons to support the bounding squad (See Figure 4-5).



Figure 4-5. Platoon bounding overwatch.

(2) Method Two. Another way is to have one squad use bounding overwatch and have the other two squads use crawling or traveling overwatch technique.

(3) Movement Considerations. When deciding where to send the bounding element, consider:

- (a) Where the enemy is likely to be.
- (b) The mission.
- (c) The route to the next overwatch position.
- (d) The weapon range of overwatching unit.
- (e) The responsiveness of the rest of the unit.
- (f) The fields of fire at the next overwatch position.

(F) Platoon march column marching overwatch using successive or alternate bounds (See Figure 4-6 and 4-7).



Figure 4-6. Movement by successive bounds.



Figure 4-7. Movement by alternate bounds.

4-2. Tactical Marches. Platoon conduct two types of tactical marches with the company. They are foot marches and motor marches.

a. Purpose/General. A successful foot march is when troops arrive at their destination at the prescribed time, physically able to execute their tactical mission. Keys to a good foot march are leader, leader and light march team and other soldiers.

b. Standard.

(1) The unit crosses the start point and release point at the time specified in the order.

(2) The unit follows the prescribed route, rate of march, and interval without deviation unless required otherwise by enemy action or higher headquarters orders.

c. Fundamentals.

(1) Effective control.

(2) Detailed planning.

d. Considerations.

(1) MTT-1

1st Phase - Task and Purpose.

1st Step - Intentions, Capabilities, and Course of Action.

1st Terrain and Weather - Road condition and visibility (AMOC).

1st Troops and Equipment - Condition of troops and weight of their loads, availability of water, A.O.D. W.

1st Time - Start time, release time, rate of march (M or H), night D.E. shift, time available for planning.

- 170 Start point time, release point time, and the rate of march.
- 180 March Interval - Squad, Troop, and Individual.
- 190 Action on enemy contact - fire and groups.
- 199 Action at HMF.
- 200 Fire - 8 detail plan of fire support for the march.
- 210 Water supply plan.

g. Subject and Responsibility.

- 120 Staff Organization.
 - 1a) Headquarters - Command and Control.
 - 1b) Security - One platoon lined up (two) teams.
 - 1c) Main Body - Two marching line squads and support squad.
- 130 Command and Control.
 - 1a) Control Measures.
 - 1i) Start point and release point (given to you by Higher).
 - 1ii) Check points - report to Higher, utilize to remain oriented.
 - 1iii) Rally or rendezvous points - utilized in the event platoon squads separated.
 - 1b) Location of Leaders - Where they can best control their unit.
 - 1c) Comm Plan - Location of radios, transmitters, call signs, and GP codes.
 - 1d) Movement Techniques.
 - 1i) 2 - 8 column w/ dry.
 - 1ii) 1 - 8 column w/ light.
 - 140 March Order. May be issued in an OPORD, LOGOP, or AOP or either used with operation overlay, or a staff map.
 - 150 Formation and Order of Movement.
 - 1a) Route of March - Specialty group, start point, release point, rally point, march point, breakfast point.

- 131 Platoon Leader.
 - 1a) Before - Issue Warning Order, FMO, inspect, and supervisor utilize subordinates time to prepare for mission.
 - 1b) During - March Start Point time, ensure interval is maintained, maintain control, enhance security, remain oriented.
 - 1c) At Halt - Notify HQ and BL's two minutes prior to halt, maintain security, check condition of men, plan for water discipline and fire restriction. Inform HQ and BL's fire status prior to move out.
 - 1d) After the march - Ensure men are prepared to accomplish their mission, supervisor BL's, and ensure medical attention is provided to men or reports.
- 132 Platoon Sergeant.
 - 1a) Before - Execute Platoon Leader, report recommendations, and enhance control and tracking info.
 - 1b) During - Control straggling, maintain platoon leader in maintaining proper interval, and security.
 - 1c) At Halt - Enhance security, inspect status of men, enhance field sanitation.
 - 1d) After March - Coordinate for water, ration, and medical supplies. Receive feedback.
- 133 Squad Leader.
 - 1a) Before - Provide training instruction to TL's, ensure their PFC order for effectiveness/accuracy of fire.

of equipment, full canteens, and equal distribution of loads.

12) During - Canteen squad, maintaining proper interval between men and pack speed, maintaining accountability of men and equipment, ensuring security, and mission oriented.

13) 1st Halt - Ensure security is maintained, provide men for water supply as detailed. Physically check men in his squad, ensure they drink water, and change socks as necessary. Relates heavy equipment.

14) 2nd Halt - Reorganize squad sector of assembly zone, conduct foot inspection and report condition of men to Platoon Leader. Ensure men are accomplishment of the mission.

13) Security Squad.

1a) Lead Man - Point element for platoon, make route to HQ, call in check points, provide early warning, and maintain size of squad.

1b) Trail Man - Move well in the rear of the main body, provide early warning, maintain in support of main body (M113). Secure start line for main body, and maintain size of squad.

14) Pack Setter

1a) An experienced soldier carrying the same load as the majority of the soldiers. Should be of medium height.

1b) Move 4-10 meters in front of main body and maintain rate ordered by PL.

15) Halt - Lead at slight leadership in the assessment and treatment of march conditions. Advise the chain of command of the evacuation and transportation requirements of assemblies.

16) Individual - Maintains interval, follows PL's example, stays hard and even gait, and remains alert during march and at halts.

Halts - direct halt generally after first 15 minutes, 15 minutes long. Thereafter, every 30 minutes for 10 minutes during march(es).

a. Short Halts - Water drinks.

b. Long Halts - Foot maintenance.

c. May have 15 minute halt halfway point of last movement.

ACCOMPLISH EFFECT -

4-5. Motor Marches. The platoon conducts motor marches like any other tactical movement. Special requirements are listed:

- Protection. Sandwiching the tail of the team to protect the packers from attack.

- Observation. Keeping back up teams to allow 360-degree observation and rapid dismount.

- Inspection. Inspecting vehicles and driver to ensure they are ready. Checking fuel level and favor a knowledge of the route, start and distance between vehicles.

- Loading. The platoon should load vehicles keeping fire team, ammo, and mission integrity. For example, fire team and ammo must be on the same vehicle and platoon in the same serial. Additionally, any leaders, supplies, and equipment should be considered.

• Personnel. Retaining immediate action to enemy contact (use not for ambush, use effort) securing the latter bases when in use.

• Air guards. Posting air guards for each vehicle.

4-8. Movement during limited visibility conditions.

It is not when visibility is poor, a platoon must be able to function like same as during day. It must be able to control, navigate, maintain security, move, and fight at night or during limited visibility.

a. Control. When visibility is poor, the following methods are in control:

- Detailed personal use of night vision devices.
- Leaders move closer to the team.
- The platoon advances slowly.
- Each soldier uses the small angle of his own legs on the edge of his helmet to align the soldier behind him to step.
- Leaders reduce the interval between soldiers and column units to make sure they can see each other.
- Leaders conduct headcounts at regular intervals and after each halt to ensure personnel accountability.

b. Navigation. To assist in navigation during limited visibility, leaders use:

- Terrain association (general situation of ground) coupled with description of position and ground features.
- Good sectioning (advance direction and specific distances or legs). At the end of each leg, leaders should verify their location.
- Personnel.
- Personnel routes that parallel identifiable terrain features.
- Guides or marked routes.
- Maps to verify route to the proper location.
- Position location devices.

c. Security. For stealth and security in night moves, squads and platoons:

- Designate a point man to manage distances, the lead team leader to navigate, and a pace man to count the distance traveled. Alternate commands and pace man are designated.
- Allow no smoking, no lights, and no noise.
- Use radio-identifying devices.
- Camouflage positions and equipment.
- Use terrain to avoid detection by enemy surveillance or night vision devices.
- Keep necessary signaling signals.
- Keep the guards of movement with utility lines.

8. Night walking. Proficiency in night walking is gained through practice. A soldier walking at night looks ahead, then slowly lifting his right foot, moves it forward about a inch to the front of the left foot. While moving his foot forward and keeping his knee pointed forward, the soldier feels for ledge and step areas. He slowly places his feet on the ground. Contact of heel, joint flexing, the soldier slowly moves his weight forward, kneecaps, then reaches the process with the other foot. This technique is slow and time-consuming.

a. Walking. Soldiers walk to get as close as they can to an enemy bunker, pillbox, or tank. This is best described as a slow, creeping night walk. The soldier watches the enemy continuously. When close to the enemy, the soldier adjusts to help correct light reflected by his eyes. He breathes slowly through his nose. If the enemy looks in his direction, the soldier freezes. He takes advantage of the background to blend with shadows and to prevent glare or contrast. Soldiers move during distractions such as gas or wind, vehicle movement, leaf falling, or nearby enemy fire.

STEP 1: PL moves himself, RTG and 3 team across the DL. PL team provides overwatch for squad elements.

STEP 2: 4 team or element at DL, on command or lead RTG or 3 team.

- 13) Linear Danger Area Crossing for a Platoon
- 1a) The lead squad holds the platoon, and signals danger area.
 - 1b) The platoon leader moves forward to the lead squad to define the danger area.
 - 1c) The platoon leader defines danger area and establishes team and file rally points.
 - 1d) On the platoon leader's signal, the 4 team shifts to the lead squad establishes an overwatch position to the left of the crossing site. Prior to crossing, the overwatch with the lead 1st squad define width and cross date.
 - 1e) 4 team (RTG) at the lead squad establishes an overwatch position to the right of the crossing site.
 - 1f) Cross overwatch positions are established - the platoon leader gives the second squad in movement the signal to cross across by fire team.
 - 1g) Cross across, the squad in the lead in movement RTG continues on width.
 - 1h) Once 4 team, Lead, 1st and 2nd (RTG) is conducted, squad leader signals platoon leader all clear.
 - 1i) Dry tie - Hand and eye signals thumbs up. Night tie - Use flashes of Red Light.
 - 1j) Platoon leader receives all clear and crosses with RTG, PG, MGL, and 3 gun team.
 - 1k) Cross across, PL signals the 2d squad in movement to cross on their location.
 - 1l) PG with team and 1 gun team crosses after 2d squad in across (establishing central overwatch site).
 - 1m) PG signals security squad to cross at their location.

Note 1: Platoon Leader will plan for support fires on 4d danger area.

Note 2: Squads in overwatch 1d and 1e will sterilize when they cross.

Support -

- 4 and 3 teams of lead squad occupy overwatch positions.
- Second squad crosses, and continues on width.
- PL crosses with RTG, PG, MGL, and 3 gun team.
- 1st squad crosses in movement, linking with 1st squad.
- PG crosses with team and gun team.
- Security squad crosses, linking with 2d squad.
- With the new order of movement (formerly 2d squad in movement now leading) and the former 1st squad in movement in trail, the platoon continues movement on width.

131 Danger Area (Small/Open).

- (a) The lead squad forms the platoon, and signals danger area.
- (b) The platoon leader moves forward to the lead squad to confirm the danger area.
- (c) The platoon leader confirms danger area and establishes rear and far side rally points.
- (d) The platoon leader designates lead squad to bypass danger area using the flanking bypass method.
- (e) Upon start to move, lead squad effects changes to bypass left or right as designated and moves in that direction. Bypass area does count and starts new pass count.
- (f) After moving past danger area instructed by platoon leader, lead squad resumes original march, bypass original pass count.
- (g) When passing by the open area, the lead squad area again stops and again effect changes to bypass left or right and platoon starts pass count again.



Figure 4-11. Danger Area (Small/Open)

(4) Danger Area (Small)

- (a) A series of danger areas and low or open danger areas either on area that can be either observed, or suspected by fire.
- (b) Double linear danger area - low linear danger area technique phase as one danger area.
- (c) Linear/small open danger area - low bypass/linear technique.
- (d) Linear/linear open danger area - low platoon wedge if necessary.

Notes: Series of danger areas will be crossed using the technique which provides the most security.

(5) Danger Area (Large)

- (a) Lead squad forms the platoon, and signals danger area.
- (b) The platoon leader moves forward with SFTLD and P.D. and to confirm danger area.
- (c) The platoon leader confirms danger area and establishes rear and far side rally points.
- (d) Platoon leader designates direction of movement.
- (e) Platoon leader may designate change of formation (i.e., the MTT-7) as necessary.

CHAPTER FIVE

PATROLLING

Patrols are assigned to gather information or to conduct combat operations. Infantry platoons and squads perform three types of patrols: reconnaissance, combat, and tracking. This chapter describes the planning considerations used in preparation for patrols, conduct of patrols, and establishment of and actions taken in a patrol base.

5-1. PLANNING CONSIDERATIONS

This paragraph provides the planning considerations common to most patrols. It discusses the required tasks that guide the platoon and squad leader in organizing patrols, the initial planning and coordination requirements, and the coordination requirements for the departure and resupply of friendly lines.

a. Organizing for a patrol mission. This paragraph discusses the different tasks that may be required of a unit for a reconnaissance, combat, or tracking patrol. A patrol is a mission, not an organization. To accomplish the patrolling mission, a platoon or squad must perform specific tasks, for example, secure itself, danger area crossings, or rally points. Reconnoiter the patrol objective carefully, track, assault, or ambush. As with other missions, the leader keeps elements of his unit in accordance with his estimate of the situation. He identifies those tasks his unit must perform and decides which elements of his unit will perform which tasks. Where possible, in assigning tasks, the leader should maintain squad and fire team integrity. The chain of command

continue to lead its elements tactically during a patrol. In the discussion that follows, the term "element" and "team" refers to the element, line team, or buddy team that performs the tasks as described. Elements and line teams may perform the tasks as described. Support and line teams may perform one task or one task in an assigned sequence other than perform only one task. The leader must give carefully to ensure that the element and assigned all assigned tasks in the most efficient way. Elements and teams for missions conducting patrols include the following:

III Elements consist of all patrols:

1a) Headquarters element. The headquarters consists of the platoon leader, DETROIT, platoon sergeant, PO and TD DETROIT. It may consist of any attachments that the platoon leader decides that he or the platoon sergeant must control directly.

1b) Aid and litter team. Aid and litter teams are responsible for tracking and evacuating casualties.

1c) Heavy prisoner of war team. The team are responsible for controlling enemy prisoners (AW) the five E and the leader's guides.

1d) Surveillance team. The surveillance team must patrol on the objective from the time that the leader's reconnaissance and until the unit departs for outside of the objective. They then join their element.

1e) E and photo recorder. The e and photo recorder records all information collected during the mission.

1f) Company map. The company map provides information by recording the last time team leader receives an update of all lines. Instructions to the company map must include an initial sketch and subsequent sketches provided as necessary. The company map should precede the element on the initial sketch before the unit moves out, especially if the map will be during initial stability

conditions. The platoon or squad leader should also designate an alternate company map.

IV Combat patrols-

1a) Assault element. The assault element organizes and executes the objective set primary assault teams as they complete their assigned missions on the objective.

1b) Security element. The security element provides security at danger areas, securing the OMP, isolates the objective, and supports the withdrawal of the rest of the platoon once it completes its assigned missions on the objective. The security element may have separate security teams, each with an assigned task or sequence of tasks.

1c) Support element. The support element provides direct and indirect fire support for the unit.

1d) Demolition team. Demolition teams are responsible for preparing and executing the charges to destroy equipment, vehicles, or facilities on the objective.

1e) Search team. The search element may conduct searches of buildings or houses (fire team) search areas to search houses, buildings, or tunnels on the objective. These teams will search the objective or till areas for casualties, documents, or equipment.

V Reconnaissance patrols-

1a) Reconnaissance team. Reconnaissance teams reconnoiter the objective area from the security teams and its position. Normally teams are known as "buddy teams" to ensure the possibility of detection.

1b) Reconnaissance and security team. The team are normally used in a reconnaissance and security situation when it is impossible to separate the responsibilities for reconnaissance and security.

6. Initial planning and coordination. Leaders plan and prepare the entire group for the team's primary objectives and the objectives of the situation. Leaders identify essential actions to the objective, plan and forward to the participants the necessary information and forward to the necessary of friendly lines. They normally receive the information in the situation or prepare of other participants and give the key personnel the necessary information. Leaders and interactively, give power the direct-line support of the group unit, the group forward of friendly units, coordination with the support and details. They coordinate continuously throughout the period and preparation phase. They use flexibility to provide getting any stress relief in the accomplishment of the mission.

(1) Leader coordination between the leader and the direction staff or necessary personnel involves—

- Strategy or tactics in the given situation.
- Best use of terrain for routes, rally points, and other lines.

- Light and weather conditions.
- Strategy in the friendly situation.
- The placement of personnel and special

units or equipment for terrain, equipment, sniper teams, about the terrain, etc., or information.

- Use and location of friendly lines.
- Deception and security of friendly lines.
- Close support of the objective and along the primary routes, including alternate routes.

• Personnel strength and time. The terrain for movement should be suitable to meet the primary objectives, to require positions and fortifications if necessary.

Coordination for maintenance includes security of the team, use of signals, camouflage, and line security.

- Special equipment requirements

- Transportation support, including transportation to and from the rehearsal site.

- Signal plan—radio signals, frequencies, call signs, radio techniques, and challenge and response.

(2) The leader coordinates with the unit through which the mission or action will proceed for forward and rearward passage of lines. The possible lines for coordination are discussed in the appendix.

(3) The leader also coordinates the unit's patrol activities with the leaders of other units that will be operating in adjacent areas at the same time.

7. Completion of the Plan. As the direct line completes the plan or rearward the objective

(1) Essential and supporting tasks. The leader ensures that the primary objectives are met or achieved as the objective. He fully informs the leader of the security or surveillance location, along the routes, and the passage lines to the point of the objective.

(2) Key terrain and position tasks. The leader estimates the requirements for movement to the objective, leader requirements of the objective, requirements of security and surveillance, completion of all primary tasks as the objective, movement in an objective rally point to defend the unit, and return to and through friendly lines.

(3) Primary and alternate routes. The leader selects primary and alternate routes to and from the objective (Figure 3-1). The routes should avoid danger from the routes to the objective.



Figure 8-1. Primary and alternate routes.

14) Signals. The leader should consider the use of special signals. These include arm-and-hand signals, flares, voice, whistles, radios, and infrared equipment. All signals must be rehearsed so that all soldiers know what they mean.

15) Challenge and password forward of friendly lines. The challenge and password from the unit's GSI must not be used beyond the BSB.

16) The unit can use the call-number system. The leader specifies an call number. The challenge can be

any number less than the specified number. The password will be the number that must be added to it to equal the specified number.

16) The unit can also designate a running password. This code word alerts a unit that friendly soldiers are approaching if a less than organized enemy and possibly under pressure. This can be used to get soldiers quietly through a special-use passage of friendly lines. The running password is followed by the number of soldiers approaching ("Recon-300 five"). This prevents the enemy from joining a group in an attempt to penetrate a friendly unit.

16) Location of leaders. The leader considers where he and the platoon sergeant and other key leaders should be located for each phase of the patrol mission. The platoon sergeant is normally with the following elements for each type of patrol:

- On a raid or ambush, he normally controls the support element.
- On an area reconnoissance, he normally moves to the OMP.
- On a zone reconnoissance, he normally moves with the reconnoissance element that sets up the link-up point.

17) Action on enemy contact. Unless required by the mission, the unit avoids enemy contact. The leader's plan must address action on enemy contact at each phase of the patrol mission. The unit's ability to continue will depend on how early contact is made, whether the platoon is able to break contact successfully (so that its movement direction is unaffected), and whether the unit receives any casualties as a result of the contact.

18) The plan must address the handling of seriously wounded soldiers and sick.

181 The tier must address the handling of prisoners who are captured as a result of chance contact and are not part of the planned mission.

182 Contingency Plans. The leader leaves his unit for any reason throughout the planning, coordination, preparation, and execution of the patrol mission. Each tier the leader departs without notice or prior notification, he must issue a livepoint contingency plan to the leader left in charge of the unit. The contingency plan includes:

- Where the leader is going.
- Who he is taking with him.
- The amount of time he plans to be gone.
- The unit's actions if the leader does not return.
- The unit's and the leader's actions on chance contact while the leader is gone.

4. Departure from Friendly Lines. The departure from friendly lines must be thoroughly planned and coordinated.

183 Coordination with the commander of the friendly unit includes:

- Does the platoon leader will provide the unit for example, unit identification, sign of the patroling mission and return lines, and the role of the patroling unit's departure.
- Does that will be provided by the forward unit to the platoon leader?
 - Additional interaction on terrain.
 - Known or suspected enemy positions.
 - Enemy activity.
 - Enemy activity.
 - Detailed interaction on friendly positions and obstacle locations. This includes the location of GPR.

-- Friendly unit sign plan.

-- Support that the unit can provide for example, fire support, liaison teams, guides, communications, and reaction force.

- SOI information, night sign, contact password, and procedure for maintaining contact of lines.

- Locations of forward lines, initial only point, and departure and assembly points.

(2) The platoon leader coordinates with the leaders of other units that will be operating in the area or adjacent areas.

- Identification of the operating units.
- Mission of the operating units.
- Routes.
- Fire plan.
- Sign plan.
- Signs and points for departure and assembly.
- Any information about the enemy.

(3) In his plan for the departure of friendly lines, the leader should consider the following sequence of actions:

- Contact contact with friendly units at the contact point.
- Movement to the coordinated initial only point.
- Completion of final coordination with the friendly unit.
- Final preparations at the initial only point.
- Movement to get through the passage point.

The platoon should remain in single file. The platoon sergeant follows directly behind the guide so that he can report back earlier that passes through the unit's position.

system. He gives the work to the guide, tells her how long to wait at the primary print for when to submerge, and confirms the starting procedure.

Note: If IPR system makes contact after it is past the threshold point, it jumps through. Submerge returns to the tapeless point only if the split becomes disassociated. They then reoccupy the initial rally point and the leader returns to higher headquarters.

- Establishment of a security-distancing rally beyond the friendly unit's line of protective fire.

e. Rally points. The IPR system carries the unit and initiates its rally point. A rally point is a place designated by the IPR when the unit moves to reoccupy an area because it is under threat.

(1) Selection of rally points. The leader physically reexamines routes to select rally points wherever possible. He assigns objective points if he can help protect the rear headquarters. He conducts them by verbal instruction or his unit starts off on their own. Rally points must:

- be easy to find.
- have cover not necessary.
- be easy to see without line of sight.
- be suitable for short periods.

(2) Types of rally points. The most common types of rally points are initial, ambush, objective, security, and security-distancing rally points. Soldiers must know which rally point to move to at each point of IPR contact points should they become separated from the unit. They should know what actions are required there and how long they are to wait at each rally point before moving to another.

(a) Initial rally point. An initial rally point is a place inside of friendly lines where a unit may assemble and regroup if it runs away without losing the objective of friendly lines or before reaching the final or main rally point. It is normally selected by the commander of the friendly unit.

(b) Security rally point. The leader designates security rally points every 100 to 200 meters ahead on the terrain, vegetation, and visibility. Never the leader designates a rear security rally point, the rearward designated one goes into effect. This position uncertainty over which one soldiers should move to if the unit makes contact immediately after the leader designates a security point. There are three ways to designate a rally point:

- Obviously across the line of sight.

This is the preferred method.

- Point by its distance and direction using arm-and-hand signal.

- Walk through unit indicating using arm-and-hand signal.

(c) Objective rally point. The objective rally point (ORP) is a point out of sight, sound, and smell--over range of the enemy's fire. It is normally located in the direction that the unit goes to move after completing its actions on the objective. The ORP is indicated until the objective is reached (see figure 9-2).

- Action at or from the ORP includes:

--reconnoitering the objective.

--firing a round, if needed.

--reconnoitering if needed from

--rearward, if contact was not made.

--making final preparations before continuing operations in the area, including:

--preparing ammunition; listing of personnel

--for final assembly.

grabbing; OPW timings; direct air time, and littering and inspecting weapons.

- Accounting for soldiers and equipment after actions at the objective are complete.
- Reestablishing the chain of command after actions at the objective are complete.

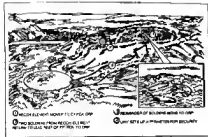


Figure 3-3. Objective rally point.

10) Leader's Reconnaissance of the Objective. The plan must include a leader's reconnaissance of the objective once the platoon or squad establishes the OPW. Before entering the leader must issue a B point contingency plan.

FIVE POINT CONTINGENCY PLAN FORMAT

1. **Objec.** Where the platoon/squad leader is going.
2. **Others.** Who is the PL/SL taking with him.
3. **Time.** Time to exit to zone.
4. **What.** What to do if he does not return in time.
5. **Actions.** Actions on enemy contact, you also add
 - a. If the PL/SL have enemy contact:
 1. The PL/SL will _____
 2. The unit will _____
 - b. If the unit I-1 has enemy contact:
 1. The PL/SL will _____
 2. The unit will _____

Use the acronym BOWH, shown above, to facilitate quick and effective use of the B-point contingency plan.

11) During its reconnaissance, the leader--

- identifies the objective.
- selects security, support, and assault positions for the squads and fire teams.
- adjusts the plan based on the observation of the objective.

12) Each type of patrol requires different tasks during the leader's reconnaissance. The platoon leader will bring different elements with him. (These are discussed separately under each type of patrol.)

13) The leader must also time to return to the COP, complete his plan, disseminate information, issue orders and instructions, and place his squads to carry any additional preparations.

5. Action on the Objective. Each type of patrol requires different action on the objective. They are discussed separately under each type of patrol.

5-3. RECONNAISSANCE OPERATIONS.

General. There are three types of reconnaissance operations: area, zone and route reconnaissance. The two types discussed first are area and zone. Recon patrols provide timely and accurate information on the enemy and terrain. They confirm the leader's plan before it is executed. Units on reconnaissance operations collect specific information directly intelligible arrangements (PIA) or general information intelligence arrangements (GI) based on the instructions from their higher commander.

F. Area Recon

Task Standards:

1) The unit transmits all PIA and other intelligence requirements specified in OP order to the CMC.

2) The unit reconnoiters without the enemy knowing the strength, location, or direction of the recon body.

3) The unit confirms the reconnaissance and reports all interactions by OP time specified in the order.

Fundamentals of Reconnaissance:

Reconnaissance is order to know a suspected area reconnaissance, the platoon leader must fully OP fundamental of OP reconnaissance to his plan during the nature of the operation.

5-3-1. Required Information: The patrol unit tells the platoon leader what information is required. This is in the form of the priority intelligence requirements. The platoon mission is then tailored to meet interaction in combat. During the entire patrol, leaders must continuously gain and package all information acquired. The platoon reports all information it has gathered but reports nothing if a mission accomplished unless all PIA has been gathered.

5-3-1.1. Avoid Detection by the Enemy: A patrol must not let the enemy know that it is in the objective area. If the enemy knows he is being observed, he may move, change his plan, or increase his security measures. Methods of avoiding detection are:

1) Minimal movement in the objective area

2) Long Recon.

3) Move as close to the enemy as possible.

4) If possible use long range surveillance devices or night observation devices.

5) Camouflage, stealth, noise and light discipline.

6) Discrete radio traffic.

5-3-1.2. Enemy security measures: A patrol must be able to break contact and return to the friendly unit with what information is gathered. If necessary break contact and continue OP mission. Security measures must be employed so that they can overwatch the reconnaissance element, and suppress the enemy on the reconnaissance element on break contact.

5-3-1.3. Operations when OP given order received the order, he analyzes the mission to ensure he understands what must be done. This he then explains his plan to the mission.

11) The element will occupy the DPP as per the security perimeter regulations previously discussed during operations and order of movement briefing.
12) BTRCO will be given for occupation of DPP.
13) The leader will give the leader an area which substantiate having safe necessary perimeter of element.

14) Subordinate leaders report to leader of location and the leader gives specific guidance to leading for action on the objective. The following, as a minimum, will be accomplished:

- 1a) Forward movement
- 1b) TOC and time are prepared,
- 1c) Weapons are in place with a round in the chamber.

15) Once the leader receives a report from each subordinate leader reporting that all weapons going forward on the team are prepared, the leader will start briefing team.

16) The team will move to the leader's location and be briefed, told where to position the ambush, set out for meeting point.

Note: Situation is equal also element greater than 10 men if the team, two three-man TOC teams will be used for the team. If there are 10 men or less in the team, only one three-man TOC team will be used.

17) Once all personnel have been briefed, the leader will issue the TOC a five-point contingency plan and have the element the perimeter after he gives out.

18) The leader gives to order the team personnel are ready and gives over the signal to begin movement toward the objective. The prescribed movement formation is established as they begin moving toward the objective.

The recon element will move in two single formations during daylight. The subordinate leader will be at the rear of single element and security personnel from BTR team at the rear left and the security personnel from the team at the rear right. The leader will be at the rear of the second single, with the surveillance team positioned to the left and right.

19) The leader gives the signal to halt when he senses an area that he feels will make a suitable release point. It should be out of sight of the target distance from the objective (if possible, but at a minimum out of sight of the objective). It should also possess good rally point characteristics.

20) The release point should be positioned as prescribed in the OPORD and BTR degree security will be established. The leader must also be prepared to become leader with the release point and the surrounding area.

21) The leader will then issue the surveillance team a five-point contingency plan. He will also issue the ambusher an order to the release point a five-point contingency plan.

22) The leader will then take the surveillance team and subordinate leader forward to establish the objective, establish a limit of advance, and release the surveillance team. The surveillance team is positioned with rear over target and objective, and are facing BTR in the direction of the release point.

23) After the leader gets a preliminary look at the objective along with the subordinate leader and they establish a limit of advance and give tentative orange outline, they will return to the release point.

24) The leader will then continue to a plan with the subordinate leader. He will issue the subordinate leader a five-point contingency plan.

25) The two BTR teams then give out to begin the commencement of the objective attack. The diver-

Lead patrol will be the patrol used for the reconnaissance. Prior to beginning the recon, each ABG team will react with surveillance by moving forward within visibility of the area being toward the objective point and gain a fix on it. As significant changes have occurred on the objective, or a threat near it there has been a significant change. In the event of a threat seen, the squad leader will move forward to the vicinity of the surveillance position to determine if what is going on. He may have to adjust the original plan if necessary.

(14) In the event that the ABG team leader get through up, they will move around the objective gathering information. They should:

- (a) Avoid contact if the objective is not.
- (b) Maintain release point.
- (c) Not cross the limit of advance.
- (d) Maintain the use of available cover and concealment.

(15) During the conduct of the recon, each ABG team will return to the release point when any of the following occurs:

- (a) They have gathered all their info.
- (b) They have reached the limit of advance.
- (c) The alternate time or conduct the recon has expired.
- (d) Contact has been made.

(16) At the release point, the leader will convert what he has gathered with what the subordinate leader gathers and determine if he has met the ABG requirements.

Note: If the leader determines that he has not gathered sufficient information to meet the ABG requirements, or if the information he and the subordinate leader gathered

is not sufficient, he may have to send for ABG teams back up to the objective site. Before doing this, he will inform the subordinate leader of the ABG team's position and may have to return to the OHP to direct the ABG at the change. Once everyone has been informed of the change in ABG, the ABG team leader will inform the subordinate leader a original objective was not met around the side of the objective the subordinate originally requested. The subordinate leader will go forward with the leader's security team.

(17) Once ABG requirements have been met, the leader will work with the ABG team toward the surveillance position and, once within sight of the area being back toward the release point, will report this to subordinate lines their position to the release point.

(18) The recon element will then report the recon point using the same formation and return to the OHP.

(19) The recon element will halt outside the OHP and the ABG team will be ordered to return to secure their equipment and save what is their original positions on the objective.

(20) The ABG and recon element will then ensure that any excess equipment is accounted for and packed away in a properly tied down.

(21) The leader will carry a verification or check to conduct a secondary if the OHP or whether to move a safe distance away and then determine his information. If he starts to move a safe distance away, he will move his element out using the appropriate movement technique and formation, occupy a security position as described earlier, and dismount if necessary.

(22) If necessary, the leader has the BATTLE team a check of the objective area from on his the leader's watch.

125) The leader will then relieve the DDP team of
leaves take his position of the perimeter. The
subordinate leader will then go to the HATTEL, look
at the sketch of the area, and add any additional
information he may have discovered while on the
ground. Once complete, the subordinate leader will
then go relieve the leader.

126) The leader will then go to the perimeter and
advise the surveillance team leader that we
are facing the objective. This man will report to the
HATTEL and report the actions of the subordinate
leader. He will then return to his perimeter
location and advise the leader.

127) The leader will then check the final product
and have the HATTEL make three copies.

128) Once the HATTEL is finished all the copies of
the objective area, the leader will have all the
subordinate leaders report to his position. He
will give a copy of the sketch to each subordinate
leader, and have them go to the sketch. He will then
give the subordinate leaders a realistic picture of
time to help all their personnel on the sketch.

129) The subordinate leaders will have to check
for a position on the perimeter and help take on
the objective sketch. While this is being done,
the leader will meet each team of the subordinate
leaders to ensure they are getting out the correct
information. When the subordinate leaders have
checked all their personnel, they will report to
the leader.

130) The leader, subordinate leaders, and HATTEL
will each receive a copy of the sketch in their
upper left breast pocket.

131) Once classification is complete, the leader
will have the HATTEL call in the area for sketch
complete and for leaving the DDP at classification
and conducted there and has the subordinate
leaders start their personnel that they are going
to save out.

132) If contact is made:

131) While moving to the release point, the recon
element will attempt to avoid contact and
return to the DDP, secure perimeter, and
quickly move out of the area. Once they have
moved a safe distance away, the leader will
inform higher HQ of the situation and take
further instructions from them.
The main ongoing surveillance team
members will withdraw through the release
point to the DDP and follow the same
procedures as above.

132) While conducting the recon, all personnel
will time a call received on to the objective
side. Surveillance will time a call on the
release point on the objective. All elements
will call out the objective and save to the
release point. The recon team will quickly
return for all personnel and return to the
DDP. Once in the DDP, the subordinate
leaders will all have to be followed.

g. Save Recon.

Task Standards:

131) The recon element will have met other
intelligence requirements specified in the order for its
assigned task.

132) The recon element will have the enemy
leaving the strength location, or location of the area
element.

133) The recon element will have the reconnaissance and
report all information to the time specified in the order.

(7) When the scout arrives at new observation point or OP, the PL will report to PL and give him all information gathered.

(8) PL will receive briefing from PL of information gathered by other scouts, then return to squad and disseminate all information to team (secret) and allow them time to select their base.

(9) PL will ensure squad is prepared to continue mission as ordered by the PL.

g. Debriefing. Immediately after the platoon or squad returns, personnel from higher headquarters conduct a thorough debrief. This may include all members of the platoon or the leaders, NLTLDs, and any support personnel. Normally the briefing is oral. Sometimes a written report is required. NLTLD forms use the patrol report form specified by Standard 2002. Information on the written report should include--

- Size and composition of the unit conducting the patrol.
- Position of the platoon (type of patrol, location, purpose).
- Departure and return times.
- Routes. Use checkmarks, grid coordinates for each leg or phase as needed.
- Detailed description of terrain and enemy positions that were identified.
- Results of any contact with the enemy.
- Unit status at the completion of the patrol mission, including the disposition of dead or wounded soldiers.
- Casualties or recommendations.

B-3. COMBAT PATROL.

General. Units conduct combat patrols to destroy or capture enemy soldiers or equipment; destroy installations,

facilities, or key points; or harass enemy forces. They also provide security for larger units. The two types of combat patrol missions are ambush and bait. In planning a combat patrol, the platoon leader considers the following:

a. Tasks to Subordinate Units. Normally the platoon headquarters element conducts the patrol as a combat patrol mission. He must make every effort to maintain squad and fire team integrity as he assigns tasks to subordinate units.

(1) The platoon leader must consider the requirements for assaulting the objective, supporting the assault by fire, and security at the action unit throughout the mission.

(2) For the assault on the objective, the leader must consider the required effort on the objective, the size of the objective, and the known or assumed strength and disposition of the enemy on and near the objective.

(3) The leader must consider the weapons available, and the type and volume of fires required to provide fire support for the assault on the objective.

(4) The leader must consider the requirements to secure the platoon at points along the route, at danger areas, at the OP, along enemy avenues of approach into the objective, and at egress points from the mission.

(5) The leader must assign additional tasks to his squads for identification, escort of enemy killed and captured, guarding of OPs, treatment and evacuation of killed personnel of friendly casualties, and other tasks required for successful completion of the patrol mission if not already in the SOP.

(6) The platoon leader must determine who will control any attachments of skilled personnel or special equipment.

ii) Leader's Responsibilities of the Objective. In a ground attack, the leader has additional considerations for the conduct of his responsibilities of the objective area of the DWP.

iii) Composition of the leader's responsibilities only. The platoon leader will normally bring the following personnel:

- Squad Leader.
- Surveillance Team.
- Forward Observer.

iii) Search of the leader's responsibilities. In a ground attack, the platoon leader should consider the following additional actions in the conduct of his leader's responsibilities of the objective.

iii) The leader should designate a release point well away between the DWP and the objective. Squad and fire team leaders at the release point are sent to their assigned positions.

iii) The platoon leader will consider the location of the objective or kill zone. He notes the terrain and identifies where he can place saps or sappers to cover dead ends. Any changes to his plan will be made as the squad leaders (while overlooking the objective if possible).

iii) If the objective is the kill zone for an ambush, the leader's responsibilities DWP should not cross the objective. He is to leave before the key positions are taken.

iii) The platoon leader should consider the suitability of the assault and support positions and routes from these back to the DWP.

iii) The platoon leader should post the surveillance team and issue a live-fire contingency plan before returning to the DWP.

iv) Ambush-Planning Considerations. An ambush is a surprise attack from a concealed position on a moving or temporarily halted target. Ambush positions are established when the terrain is to readily allow access or egress to the ambush. Ambushes are classified by category--road or perimeter; type--point or area; and formation--linear or L-shaped. The leader uses a combination of category, type, and formation in developing his ambush plan. The key planning considerations include--

- Covering the entire kill zone by fire.
 - Using existing or man-made obstacles (ditches and other things) to keep the enemy in the kill zone.
 - Preparing the ambush and support elements with saps, sappers, or explosives.
 - Using security elements or teams to isolate the kill zone.
 - Ammunition into the kill zone to search dead and wounded, search prisoners, and collect equipment. (The ambush element must be able to move quickly through the area if necessary.)
 - Limiting the actions of all elements of the platoon to preclude loss of supplies.
 - Using only one squad to conduct the entire ambush and determining movement time of remaining squads from the DWP to the ambush site. This movement is vital when the ambush must be moved for a long time.
- iii) Calculations.

iii) Squad ambush. A unit conducts a heavily ambush when it takes visual contact with an enemy force and

has time to withdraw or retreat without being detected. The actions for a heavy ambush must be well rehearsed so that actions flow what is set as the leader signals. They must also know what action to take if the unit is detected before it is ready to initiate the ambush. The conduct of a heavy ambush is illustrated below.

11) Deliberate ambush. A deliberate ambush is conducted against a specific target at a predetermined location. The leader receives detailed information on planning a deliberate ambush:

- Size and composition of the targeted enemy
- Weapons and equipment available to the enemy.

11) Types.

1a) Point ambush. In a point ambush, soldiers deploy to attack an enemy in a single kill zone.

1b) Area ambush. In an area, soldiers deploy in two or more related point ambushes.

12) Execution.

1a) Linear. In an ambush using a linear formation, the assault and support elements deploy parallel to the enemy's route (see figure 3-4). This condition both aligns on the long axis of the kill zone and subjects the enemy to flanking fire. This formation can be used in open terrain that restricts the enemy's ability to maneuver against the platoon, or in open terrain provided a means of leading the enemy in the kill zone can be effected.

d. Standards.

11) Point ambush.

- 1a) Movement to amb location of the ambush site is unobserved.
- 1b) Surprise is achieved.
- 1c) Unit accomplishes stated (AW commander's intent):
 - 50% of OPFOR is killed, incapacitated unless killed or captured.
 - Specific equipment or personnel are captured.
 - Specific equipment or entire column is destroyed.

1d) 100% of IIR captured is reported to higher headquarters.

1e) Ambush is initiated per OPFOR.

1f) Ambush is established at assigned point.

1g) Ambush is established by M1 time prescribed in OPFOR.

1h) Unit maintains IIR or lead friendly

element has instructions unless killed or captured.

1i) Unit maintains no casualties from friendly

fire unless necessary unless killed or captured.

1j) Unit withdraws from the ambush position as ordered.

12) Area ambush.

1a) The platoon surprises the enemy unexpectantly.

1b) All ambush sites are executed not later than the time specified in the order and without being detected by the enemy.

1c) The ambushes are initiated in the order specified by the leader.

1d) The ambushes accomplish the platoon's assigned task.

111 Kill subjective unless MILORD is used, heard, or captured 30% enemy, or destroy all specified vehicles in the 111 zone.

08

121 Delay the enemy from reaching the specified location for the specified period.

09

131 Force the enemy to withdraw from the attack zone.

10

141 Prevent enemy elements larger than specified from penetrating the specified boundary.

1a1 The unit sustains no more than 10 percent casualties subjective unless MILORD is used.

1b1 The unit sustains no casualties from friendly fire subjective unless MILORD is used.

1c1 The unit demilitarized all personnel and equipment and withdrew from the zone, on order.

1d1 The unit obtains and reports 100% dir.

131 Antitank Attack

1a1 The platoon executed the attack MET the time specified in the order.

1b1 The platoon destroyed the enemy.

1c1 The platoon engaged the specified enemy element type or portion of the white security, with 100% reaction speed.

1d1 The platoon destroyed all of the specified vehicles in the 111 zone (armor, C2 vehicles, bridging equipment, AHA).

1e1 The platoon withdrew all personnel and equipment from the objective, on order.

1f1 The platoon sustained no more than 10 percent casualties.

1g1 The platoon sustains no vehicle losses.

1h1 The platoon sustains no casualties from friendly fire.

1i1 All specified dir and other intelligence requirements are obtained from the attack area.

* Control of a tank attack. The platoon leader should consider the following sequence of actions when planning a deliberate point attack:

11 The security or surveillance element should be positioned first. The support element should be in position before the assault element moves forward of the release point. The support element must overwatch the movement of the assault element into position.

12 The platoon leader directs the surveillance team to pull back to the local rear security team or rejoin the assault element.

13 Actions of the assault element should include:

- Identify individual sectors of TPA as assigned by the platoon leader. Engage along attack.
- Engage armor and other protective devices.
- Engage command, comm, or other objectives in close space within the 111 zone.
- Casualty profiles.

(ii) Actions of the assault element include--

- Identify sectors of the hill and all weapons, especially machine guns. Machine lighting stakes to prevent friendly force from hitting out the assault element in an L-shaped pattern.
- Machine playdowns and other protective actions.

(iii) Instructions to security teams must include how to notify the platoon leader of the enemy's approach into the kill zone. The security element must also keep the platoon leader informed if any enemy forces are following the lead group.

(iv) The platoon leader must determine how large an element the assault can engage successfully. He must be prepared to let units come that are too large. He must report to higher headquarters any units that pass the assault unengaged.

(v) The platoon leader initiates the assault. He may use a company designated element. He must also give a backup attack for initiating the assault should the primary team fail. This should also be a mobility-producing device such as his individual weapon. This information must be passed out to all soldiers and practiced during rehearsals.

(vi) Soldiers must have a sense of engaging the enemy in the kill zone during periods of limited visibility. It is necessary to initiate the assault under these situations. Use of teams must be weighed against how it might help the enemy to identify friendly positions. The platoon leader may use hand-held or indirect illumination devices.

(vii) The platoon leader should include indirect fire support as a part of his plan. Indirect fire can cover the flanks of the kill zone to help isolate it. They can

also help the teams to disengage if the assault is compromised or the platoon must report the assault site under pressure.

(viii) The platoon leader must have a good idea to signal the advance of the assault element into the kill zone to begin its search and collection activities. There may not be visible to the support element. All soldiers must know and practice relaying this signal during rehearsals.

(ix) The assault element must be prepared to move across the kill zone using individual movement techniques if there is any return fire once they begin to search. Otherwise, the assault element must screen by bounding fire teams. Other actions in the kill zone include:

- Collect the assault till EPWs and move them out of the kill zone before searching begins. Establish a location for EPWs and other elements who will not be taken out that provides them cover, yet allows them to be found easily to.
- Search from one side to the other to make teams that have been searched to assault the site if thoroughly covered, their white.

- Use the two-man search technique.
 - As the search team approaches a short enemy soldier, one man crouches while the other one searches. Next, he kicks the enemy soldier away. Second, he rolls the body over 180 on the stomach by taping on top and then gives the top sheet by the guard which is positioned at the enemy's head, the searcher rolls the body over on his. This is how the searcher is sure the enemy soldier has a grenade with the pin pulled underneath him.
 - The searcher then conducts a systematic search of the body soldier feet head to toe covering all torso and anything near (including belt area, shoulder straps, trousers and pouch, pistol, weapons, or M40). They roll if the enemy has a hand or shabby haircut cut the condition of his uniform and boots. They take note of the radio frequency, M40, and name. Once the body has been thoroughly searched, the search team will continue as this process until all enemy personnel is and over the hill zone have been searched. Every soldier should be searched for example, this area was checked to avoid duplication.
- Identify and collect equipment to be carried back. Prepare it for transport. Clear all weapons out place them on M40's.

- Identify and collect remaining equipment per instructions. The technician team separates first-aid supplies ICT with two M40 team fighters and two local or secondary personnel and sends the signal to retreat. This is normally the last action performed before the unit retreats the objective and may signal the security elements to return to the DMZ.

- Treat latently wounded first, then enemy wounded, then captives.

10) Actions to the objective with minimum result that all actions are the same with the exception of the search team. They must cover 3 man teams in order to provide security during the last 100 yds of the hill zone while the search is being conducted. All risks should be dropped to the rear side of the hill zone prior to the search.

10) The flank security team may also clear out antitank mines after the search has been initiated if the enemy is known to have mine capability.

10) If a flank security team makes contact, it fights as long as possible without loading too heavily weapons. It uses a counterattack signal to get the platoon leader who is in contact contact. The platoon leader may direct a portion of the support element to assist the security team in breaking contact.

10) The platoon leader must place the unit a withdrawal from the search area.

- Elements normally withdraw in the reverse order that they established their positions.
- The element may return first to the release point, then to the DMZ, depending on the distance between elements.
- The security element at the DMZ must be alert to assist the platoon's return to the DMZ. It establishes security for the platoon while the rest of the platoon processes in leave.

(f) Actions taken at the DWP include accountability of personnel and equipment and recovery of rucksacks and other equipment left at the DWP during the process.



Figure 8-4. Tiger ambush formation.

(g) L-shaped. Is an L-shaped ambush the assault element faces the long leg parallel to the enemy's direction of movement along the kill zone. The assault element faces the short leg at one end and at right angles to the assault element. This provides both flanking (long leg) and ambushing (short leg) against the enemy. The L-shaped ambush can be used at a sharp bend in a trail, road, or stream. It should not be used where the short leg would have to cross a straight road or trail. (See figure 8-5).



Figure 8-5. L-shaped ambush formation.

(h) Contact of a heavy ambush. Is planning and executing a heavy ambush the platoon leaders should consider the following sequence of activities:

- Using visual signals, any soldier alerts the unit that an enemy force is in sight. The soldier continues to monitor the location and activities of the enemy force until he is relieved by his team or squad leader.
- The platoon or squad halts and assumes positions.
- The leader lateralizes the best nearby location for a heavy ambush. He uses branch-and-stem signals to direct the unit members to covered and concealed positions.

- The leader designates the location and extent of the kill zone.
- Security elements move out to cover each flank and the rear of the unit. The leader directs the security elements to take a given distance, set up, and define the unit as order or, after the ambush (the sound of firing ceases). At equal level, the sub outside body faces normally provide flank security as well as fire into the kill zone. At platoon level, fire teams make up the security elements.

(ii) Contact of an area ambush. The platoon leader should consider the following sequence of actions when planning a deliberate area ambush.

(1) A platoon is the smallest unit to conduct an area ambush. Units contact area ambushes where enemy movement is largely restricted to trails or streams (see figure 5-4).



Figure 5-4. Area ambush.

(2) The platoon leader should select one principal ambush site around which he organizes outlying ambushes. These secondary sites are located along the enemy's most likely approach to any escape from the principal ambush site. Squads assigned elements are normally responsible for each ambush site. They establish or select ambush as described above.

(3) The platoon leader must determine the level of concealment of his machine guns. He normally positions them both with the support element of the principal site.

(4) Squads responsible for outlying ambushes do not initiate their ambushes until after the principal one is initiated. They then engage to prevent enemy forces from escaping or retreating.

(5) Conduct of an antitank ambush. Platoons can execute conduct antitank ambushes to destroy one or two armored vehicles. (See figure 5-7). If a scout is given the mission to conduct an antitank ambush, it should have a mine case attached to it. The leader considers the following when planning an antitank ambush.



Figure 5-7. Antitank ambush.

111 The rear-billie team is built around the M40 team. The leader must consider additional weapons available to supplement the M40s. These are normally LAW or AT4s. The leader must carefully position all antiarmor weapons to ensure the best M40 cover, flank, or top.

112 The readiness of the unit must function as support and security elements in the same way that they do for other ambush sites.

113 In a good antiarmor ambush, the attack leader selects the general site for the ambush. The guard leader must find a site that restricts the movement of enemy vehicles out of the kill zone. The leader should attempt to place his elements so that an obstacle is between him and the kill zone.

114 Security elements must consider dismounted teams of weapons into the ambush site.

115 The leader should consider the method for initiating the antiarmor ambush. The preferred method is to use a command-detonated antiarmor mine placed in the kill zone. The M40 can be used to initiate the ambush, but its signature and slow rate of fire make it less desirable.

116 If possible, the rear-billie team attempts to kill the first one last vehicles in the ambush.

117 All other weapons must fire into the ambush area before. If the kill zone is within range of light antiarmor weapons, such as AT4s, fire during the ambush.

118 The leader must consider how the presence of dismounted enemy with the tanks will affect the success of his ambush. The leader's choices include--

- Initiate the ambush as planned.
- Withdraw without initiating the ambush.
- Initiate the ambush using only automatic weapons without firing antiarmor weapons.

119 Because of the speed with which other support forces can reinforce the enemy in the ambush area, the leader should plan to keep the engagement short, and the withdrawal quick. The unit will not enter through the kill zone as in other ambushes.

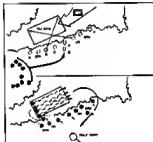


Figure 3-6. Spot team ambush

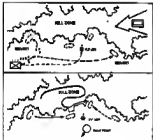


Figure 5-9. Platoon heavy ambush.

5-3. RAID.

a. **Raid.** A raid is a contact operation to attack a position or installation followed by a planned withdrawal. Raids do not conduct raids. The objective of platoon actions for a raid is similar to those for an ambush. Additionally, the assault element of the platoon may have to conduct a breach of an obstacle. It may have additional tasks to perform on the objective for example, destruction of base facilities.

b. Raid Standards

- The platoon surprises the enemy.
- The platoon initiates the raid (AI) (BT) (T) (D) specified in the order.
- The platoon assaults the objective and accomplishes its assigned task within the commander's intent.
 - Forces the enemy to withdraw from the objective.
 - Kills, wounds, captures, or forces the withdrawal of 100 percent of the enemy.
 - Captures specified personnel.
 - Destroys specified equipment or installation.
- The platoon does not become decisively engaged.
- The platoon withdraws all personnel and equipment from the objective area, on order.
- The platoon retains all FIR from the raid site.
- The platoon sustains no casualties from friendly fire.
- The platoon sustains no more than 10 percent casualties.
- The platoon sustains no more than one vehicle loss.

2. **Field Fundamentals:**

- Superior infiltration/insertion/surprise element.
- Coordinated times local and objective.
- Violence at outset.
- Planned withdrawal.

(i) **Security Halt:** At 200-400 meters from the tentative site, the platoon will halt, the Pl will issue the PMS's contingency plan and send SUI to reconnoiter and secure the ORP. The reconnoitering party and security party will be determined by the Pl using WETT-1.

(2) **Reconnoitering, secure, and occupy the ORP:**

(a) The squad leader establishes security halt for Pl ahead of tentative ORP location in WETT-7 dependent. Weapons move in cover and concealed positions.

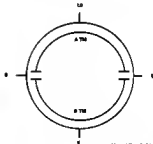
(b) SL/PL gathers key personnel for leaders' recon of ORP.

(c) SL/PL issues 3-point contingency plan to team leader/PMS, usually team SUI.

(d) SL/PL verifies ORP site/location and determines suitability.

- If suitable - clears/secures ORP location. ORP will be cleared using the standard method.
- If not suitable, recon for alternative site. If possible step mentioned above once site is selected.
- SL/PL issues a 3-point contingency plan to ORP clear/secure team leader.
- SL/PL returns to unit. Notes: The SL/PL may not be able to call the main body forward based on WETT-11.

- This secures ORP using block method (see Figure 8-10) per square and Figure 8-11 for patterns. Direction of movement is 12 o'clock. Perimeter is adjusted as required.



SEE AT 9 O'CLOCK.

Figure 8-10. Squad ORP Clearance

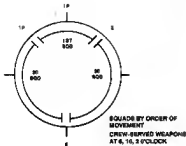


Figure D-11. Platoon DFP Clearance.

13) Designates the release point, drops off release point security.

14) Platoon objective area and mission surveillance.

15) Reconnaissance location for assault and support elements.

16) Continues or starts plan, leaves contingency plan with the surveillance team and returns to the release point.

17) Once at the release point, the platoon leader will brief the security element leader on the tentative security positions. If time permits, the squad leader and the platoon leader should replace the security teams. Their positions are critical in the successful accomplishment of the mission. If the security teams were brought forward on the leaders' reconnaissance, the security leader can begin moving security into position while the platoon leader and the remainder of the platoon reconnaissance party move back to the DFP.

18) Moving elements into position and back to the DFP, the platoon leader will issue any changes to the plan based on the leader's reconnaissance. After the information has been disseminated, the leaders prepare to move the assault into position. Communication is vital - the support platoon cannot move into position until security is in place. If support is going to be integrated into the assault line, the two elements will move in together. Once the platoon leader has confirmation that the security element is in position, he can move the support element into position. Prior to releasing the support element, he must issue them a contingency plan. Once the support element leader has confirmed he is in position and ready to support the assault movement, the security element can move into position. Prior to moving forward the platoon leader must conduct a quick mental

with the movement team to ensure nothing has changed on the objective side. If nothing has changed, move the assault into final position so that all positions are occupied and sectors of fire are designated.

iii) Movement team the assault position to the objective. The assault position is normally the last advanced and concealed position before reaching the objective.

iii) As it passes through the assault position, the platoon disintegrates into its assault formations that is, its squads and line teams begin to place the bulk of their firepower to the front as they assault the objective. A platoon sometimes must halt to complete its equipment and to ensure synchronization so that all squads assault at the assigned time.

Note: Units should avoid halting in the assault position, because it is dangerous and may cause the loss of momentum.

ii) The assaulting squads move from the assault position and onto the objective. The platoon must be prepared to breach the enemy's protective obstacles.

iii) As the platoon moves beyond the obstacle, supporting fires should halt lifting and shifting away from the objective. Both direct and indirect fires must be sustained from adjacent to the objective, to destroy enemy forces retreating, or to prevent enemy reinforcement at the objective.

iii) Reaching the Objective. As the platoon or its assault element moves onto the objective, it must increase the volume and accuracy of fires. Squad leaders assign specific targets or objectives for their line teams. Only when these elements have been the enemy

destroyed can the rest of the unit advance. As the assault element gets closer to the enemy, there is more emphasis on suppression and less on movement. Ultimately, all but one line team may be suppressing to allow that one fire team to break into the enemy position. Throughout the assault, platoon and team individual ground techniques, and fire teams retain their basic shallow wedge formation. The platoon does not get "locking" to enable across the objective.

(d) Consolidation/Reorientation:

- i) The platoon -
 - Establishes security.
 - Issues fire orders.
 - Provides first aid and prepares wounded soldiers for MEDVAC.
 - Repairs damaged obstacles and prepares lines (cleared and supply lines).
 - Reestablishes communication and supplies.
 - Requests medical returns to alternate positions if leaders believe that the enemy has fired projectiles that during the attack.
 - Adjusts their positions to maintain mutual support.
 - Reestablishes communications.
 - Reoccupies and assigns positions, and prepares for second enemy attack.
- ii) Based on the team leader's position, consult, the sergeant (SG) reports to the platoon leader.
- iii) The platoon leader -
 - Reestablishes the platoon chain of command.
 - Consolidates squad COE and provides COE support to the company commander.
 - iii) The platoon sergeant coordinates fire usually and supervises the execution of the assault and fire coordination plan.

1. The platoon continues to improve position. The platoon quickly reestablishes CP and resumes patrolling as directed.

(13) Conduct organized withdrawal, using prearranged signals. The assault line will begin an organized withdrawal from the objective site maintaining contact and security as the withdrawal is executed. The assault element will move back in the vicinity of the original assault line and will follow a single file withdrawal through the platoon sergeant's check point. It is critical for all men to move through the check point and an accurate count be maintained. Once the assault element is a safe distance from the objective and the headcount is confirmed, the platoon leader will withdraw the support element. If the support element was left at the assault line they will withdraw together and the security will give the signal to withdraw. Once the support is a safe distance off the objective they will notify the platoon leader and the platoon leader will contact the security element and give them the signal to withdraw. All security teams will follow at the release point and notify the platoon leader prior to moving to the CP. As personnel return to the CP they immediately assume their equipment and maintain 360 degree security. Once the security element returns, the platoon will move out of its objective area as soon as possible, normally within 2 - 3 minutes.

2-7. DEPARTURE-ENTRY.

a. General. Departure from friendly lines. Movement in and around forward units will be kept as coordinated, coordinated, and kept to a minimum to reduce the possibility of being engaged by friendly forces and/or activating their reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition devices. Additionally, the forward unit positions are considered danger areas and it must be assumed that they are under enemy surveillance at all times.

d. Standards.

(1) The unit moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit not later than the time specified in the order.

(2) Neither unit nor body is surprised by the enemy.

e. Procedure.

(1) Squad/Platoon:

Step 1 The squad/platoon will look out load forward prior to departure of the assembly area.

Step 2 The squad/platoon will be halted at the contact point by a guide. They will exchange the challenge and password.

Step 2: The guide will bring the squad to the security hold location.

Step 3: The squad/leader will occupy this location by force and set up a 360 degree security perimeter.

Step 4: The squad leader/platoon leader will issue a five call contingency plan to the B team leader/P2B who will disseminate this to the squad/leader. He will check out, weapons, and equipment, ensure a sound is chambered and the weapon is on safe, all equipment is secure and tied down, and no check camouflages.

Step 5: The squad leader/platoon leader will then leave with the commander and the guide and move to the forward unit command post, where the squad leader/platoon leader will advise direct coordination with the unit commander. The squad leader/platoon leader will not tell the unit commander about his mission until the squad/leader is conducting a forward passage of lines.

Step 6: The squad leader/platoon leader,

guide, and commander will return to the security hold location upon completion of coordination.

Step 7: The squad leader/platoon leader will disseminate information gathered from the forward unit commander to the B team leader, and give them sign to set this information out as their personal. The squad leader/platoon leader should spot ahead to ensure the information is disseminated.

Step 8: The squad leader/platoon leader will now make any final needed adjustments prior to moving out.

Step 10: The guide will lead the squad/leader to the forward unit (PP). Inside of the PP, the guide will designate the Initial Rally Point (IRP) using the appropriate hand and arm signal, and all personnel will ensure they know the location.

Note: The IRP can be designated any of three ways:

- a. Done by the IRP and designate it using hand and arm signals.
- b. Pass through the IRP and designate it using hand and arm signals.
- c. Actually occupy the IRP.

Note: If the guide does not designate an IRP, the squad leader will.

Step 11: Once the B team leader/P2B receives the IRP hand and arm signal, he will take his way forward in the formation and take up a place immediately behind the guide. If the B team leader/P2B does not reach this position once the squad has the entrance to the PP, the A team/lead team leader will hold the squad and wait for him.

Step 12: Once the squad hits the entrance to the PP, the B team leader/P2B will take to the side and count everyone into the PP. He will take up the position at the rear and send up a five count.

Step 13: The squad/leader will follow the guide through the PP signed holding.

Step 14: Once the squad/leader hits the enemy side of the PP, the guide will stop at the front and enter.

Step 15: As each one exits the PP, he will take up his appropriate position in the screening formation. The personnel will start their guard at this point, and the commander will take up their line estimate from the point.

Step 10: The B team leader/PSD exits the PP, he will step to the side with the guide and reassemble the PP. The guide crosses the existing perimeter, the number of persons in the squad, and the time the guide will wait on the enemy side of the PP. The B team leader/PSD will then take up the position in the formation.

Step 11: The B team leader/PSD will also send up either a verbal or visual message up which he is out of the area.

Step 12: The squad/platoon will continue to move out on assault until it is within the security forward wire (usual Protective Line (PPF) or two at least) placed one terrain feature behind it and the PP.

Step 13: The squad/platoon leader will then halt the squad/platoon and conduct a security listening halt. To do this, he takes a knee and reserves his left leg, is at right, slightly toward the rear. At this time, all members of the squad/platoon will pass the signal that the security listening halt is being conducted. They will seek out any exposed cover and disassemble and get down on a knee facing out. The last two men will turn about for rear security.

Step 14: The B team leader/PSD will not come forward during the security listening halt.

Step 15: The PATROL will suffice the handset in the shell.

Step 16: Everyone will assume the key, keeping completely silent and pulling security. They will get used to the signals, sounds, and smells of the battlefield.

Step 17: Once the squad/platoon leader feels he has been in the formation an appropriate amount of time he will get the key down or for simply pass the word at night and get the squad up and moving out on assault.

Step 18: The PATROL will then call to the squad for passage complete.

Step 19: Actions on enemy contact while conducting a forward passage of lines are as follows:

- If contact is made while the squad/platoon is at the security halt location and the

squad leader/platoon leader is at the friendly forward wire a forward pass, the B team leader/PSD will then be out in the security halt location unless a representative from the unit moves the enemy identified targets. If contact is made while the squad/platoon is moving toward the PP, the squad/platoon will choose the IFF as a security perimeter, call tighter for orders, and stay in the IFF unless a representative from the friendly unit moves the squad/platoon.

- If contact is made while the squad/platoon is in the PP, they will choose assault and move back through the PP and occupy the IFF. They will inform tighter of the situation and take appropriate action.
- If the squad/platoon takes contact the PP but not yet close enough to identify forward unit a PP and contact is made, the squad leader will issue verbal instructions as to whether to go forward or back to the guide. If the squad/platoon goes down, they will use the running perimeter to enter the PP and occupy the IFF and inform tighter. Otherwise, the squad/platoon leader will simply attempt to draw contact using the appropriate tactics until and then continue on the assault.
- If the squad/platoon is already outside the PP and makes contact, they will use the appropriate tactics until to break contact.

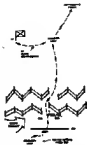


Figure 5-12. Assembly of RP.

(ii) Assembly of Friendly Line (Follower/Support

Step 1: The platoon/section occupies the Assembly Rally Point (ARP) as discussed earlier (used as security perimeter).

Step 2: The ARP location should be planned far in advance if it is in a location that has at least one significant terrain feature between the ARP and the RP to ensure that the enemy will not get hit by the effects of the friendly fire.

5-5. LINK-UP

a. A link-up is a meeting of friendly groups/forces. Link-ups depend on contact, tactical signaling, and stealth. Link-up procedures begin as the unit moves to the link-up point. The steps of this procedure are:

(1) If using radio communications, the unit reports its location using a frequency, a code word, or other control measure.

(2) The first unit at the site stops and sets up a link-up rally point about 200 meters from the link-up point.

(3) The first unit sends a security team to find the exact location of the link-up point.

(4) The security team clears the immediate area around the link-up point. It then marks the link-up point with the coordinated reception signal. The unit moves to a covered and concealed position and observes the link-up point and immediately team around it.

(5) The next unit approaching the site reports its stop and through three. When its security team arrives at the site and spots the coordinated link-up point reception signal, it gives the far reception signal.

(6) The first security team reports, and the second team advances to the first team's location. The teams exchange near reception signals.

(7) If entire units must link up, the second team returns to its own rally point and brings the unit forward to the link-up point. The first security team guides the entire second unit to the link-up rally point. Both teams are integrated into the security perimeter.

190 When more than two units use the same linkup point, the first unit leaves a security team at the linkup point. They support the linkup procedures other units arrive.

8. Linkup Site Selection. The leader identifies a suitable linkup site by map reconnaissance or a linkup site is designated by higher headquarters. The linkup site should have the following characteristics:

- (1) Easy to recognize.
- (2) Provides cover and concealment.
- (3) Easy line of sight from all units.
- (4) Defensible.
- (5) Provides suitable access and egress routes.

9. Coordination Checklist. The platoon leader completes or obtains the following information from the unit that the platoon will linkup with:

- (1) Frequencies.
- (2) Signals and alternate lines and/or recognition signals.
- (3) Code.
- (4) Recognition signals, far and near.
- (5) Fire coordination measures (for example, coordinated fire lines).
- (6) Command relationship with the linkup unit.
- (7) Status following linkup.
- (8) Control measures (contact orders, checkpoints, cross lines, etc.) others, as required.

5-4. PATROL BASE

a. Patrol Base.

(1) General. A patrol base is a position where a squad or platoon conducting a patrol holds for an extended period. Patrol bases should not be occupied for more than a 24 hour patrol (except in emergency). The unit never uses the same patrol base twice.

(2) Patrol bases are used for:

- (a) To avoid detection by eliminating movement.
- (b) To hold a unit during a long detailed reconnaissance.
- (c) To perform special missions on weapons/equipment, fuel, and food.
- (d) To plan and issue orders.
- (e) To coordinate with intelligence or enemy units.
- (f) To establish a base from which to execute several consecutive or intermittent operations (i.e., ambush, raid, etc.).

b. Standards.

(1) Recognition.

- (a) Establish patrol base on terrain that MEETS that is free of enemy.
- (b) Unit must remain unobserved while occupying the location as specified by their leader (subjective unless otherwise noted).
- (c) Priorities of work per CPORD are accomplished.
- (d) If discovered, will retreat and regain cover or establish patrol base with 100 or less casualties (subjective unless noted to report).

124. Settling in.

Let unit start setting traps and light snares and make unobtrusive observations.
125. Traps and priorities of work must be conducted in accordance with the station leader's instructions.

Let all personnel give reports of start time, execution time, and priorities of work.

a. Techniques. Keep the following fundamentals in mind during patrol base operations:

121. Site Selection. The leader selects the tentative site from a map or by aerial reconnaissance. The site's suitability must be verified; it must be assured before the unit moves into it. Plans to establish a patrol base must include selecting an alternate patrol base site. The alternate site is used if the first site is unsuitable or if the patrol must unexpectedly evacuate the first patrol base.

122. Warning Generation. Leader's standing for a patrol base must consider the station and sensitive and active security measures.

123. Warning. A patrol base must be located so it allows the unit to detect the station.

124. Security Measures. Security measures involve the following:

- 121. The leader selects:
 - Terrain that the enemy would probably consider of little tactical value.
 - Terrain that is off main lines of drift.
 - Obvious terrain does not provide best coverage that an area of dense vegetation, preferably bushes and trees that screen sites to the ground.

- Terrain near a source of water.
- Terrain that can be captured for a short period and that offers good cover and concealment.

125. The leader plans for:

- Observation posts.
- Communication with observation posts.
- Defense of the patrol base.
- Withdrawal from the patrol base to include alternate routes and a rally point, or alternate patrol or alternate patrol base.
- A security system to spot areas that sensitive soldiers are seen at all times.
- Placement of equipment, traps, and light stations.
- The conduct of required activities with minimum movement and noise.

126. The leader tracks:

- Known or suspected enemy positions.
- Sighting areas.
- Ridges and hollows, except to needed for maintaining communications.
- Small valleys.
- Roads and trails.

Note: This section is NOT-F dependent; if there is nothing to be gained by doing this step, then the unit goes out on its own terms, that desert terrain.

a. Technique. One way of ensuring not running a patrol base is:

- 121. Occupation Method. The primary method for occupying a patrol base is as follows:
 - 121. Station Leader Issues Occupancy Plan.
 - 122. Take to Ground the Log and Move to Tentative Patrol Base.

10) Clearing base areas and securing patrol area using the zigzag technique as depicted in figure 5-15.

1a) Squad leader secures contingency plan for clearing base; one man at 9 o'clock, one at 12 o'clock position.

1b) Squad leader and communication return to base and issue any changes to original plan.

1c) Squad leader has CP positioned in front of perimeter and gives them contingency plan.

1d) Unit moves out of security halt on order of sergeant that all personnel occupy perimeter of patrol base.

1e) Unit establishes perimeter and security.

1f) Deploy 360 base. At night an RB team is not sent out for a 360 base patrol base.

1g) After RB team returns, squad leader makes final adjustment to perimeter and still in vicinity codes as night, as required.

1h) Squad leaders ensure 360 degree interlocking fires.

1i) Squad leader confirms and disseminates evacuation, alert, fire plan and disseminates patrol base-readiness, distance and terrain features (from 12 line allowed).

1j) Leader determines that temporary patrol base is satisfactory and begin patrol base activities.



Figure 5-13. Occupation of patrol base required.



Figure 5-14. Clearing techniques.

12) Additional method for occupying a patrol base are listed below. METT-T dependent. Occur by same technique (PRECOP BY-PASS Fig 3-17).

1a) Security and discipline will should be at a safe distance away from tentative patrol base.

1b) Entire squad moves on original routes to vicinity of tentative patrol base.

1c) Begin series of 10 degree turns a safe distance from tentative site.

1d) Do last turn into patrol base, drop all MP and ensure five point contingency plan is issued.

1e) Squad occupies ready cover and concealment (conduct listening till 3-5 minutes).

1f) Deploy all teams (METT-T).

1g) Squad leader adjusts perimeter, RTD reports to higher headquarters.

1h) Squad leader ensures 360 degree interlocking fires.

1i) Squad leader verifies and disseminates evacuation, alert and fire plan also the emergency patrol base location. (Route, distance and terrain features, when if time allowed).

1j) Initiates priorities to work.

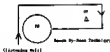


Figure 3-18. Pass by-Pass technique.

13) Tentative Patrol Base (Squad).

1a) Purpose of tentative patrol base is to seek up a squad of smaller size elements.

1b) Unit moves as a whole and occupies tentatively.

1c) Squad leader ensures that the unit moves in at 90 degree angle.

1d) Claymore mine(s) is employed as route entering patrol base.

1e) Alpha and Bravo teams all back to back facing outward. (Figure 3-19), ensuring that at least one individual per team is alert and providing security.



Figure 3-19. Patrol Base.

1f) Occupation (Platoon). Leaders Report Techniques. (Triangular perimeter - see Figure 3-20).

1g) Platoon leader, TATLO, and security element occupies tentative patrol base, which personnel are taken to 100% alert in METT-T dependent.

1h) Issues contingency plan to platoon sergeant prior to takeover. (Platoon Sergeant disseminates plan to subordinates).

(a) Recon party establishes dog leg into tentative site.

(b) Leaders recon site and establish the 4 attack positions.

(c) Platoon leader sends a clearing/security team forward in clear as area large enough for the platoon. (See figure 5-17) using the clearing technique. (See page on MPT-7).



IN-ZAG TECHNIQUE

Figure 5-17. Clearing technique.

(i) Platoon leader, MPTLO, secures squad leader and 3 men security team near the entire patrol base location for suitability.

(j) During reconnaissance platoon leader will:

- Identify location and fires for cover-based weapons.
- Identify interlocking lines (see cover level) to ensure 360 degree security.
- Ensure terrain provides cover and concealment for the platoon.
- Leave M&O (front/assistant gunner at the 10 o'clock), 2 o'clock and 4 o'clock position.

(k) Platoon leader issues contingency plan to squad leader prior to leaving. (See page on the security element attack & a'clock aspect).

(l) Platoon leader, MPTLO, and security/compass team to security halt and the platoon leader issues any changes to original plan.

(m) Platoon moves to tentative patrol base and drops off DP at the dog leg.

(n) Establish perimeter and security.

(o) Platoon leader secures 1000 yards from 4 o'clock to 10 o'clock.

(p) Second squad in movement secures 4 o'clock to 2 o'clock.

(q) The squad leader guides trail gun and trailing squad from 2 o'clock to 12 o'clock and then moves left and right to occupy 10 o'clock to 2 o'clock.

(r) Deploy M&O team around patrol base using the clearing method.

(s) MPTLO calls in assets to MPTLO.

(t) Platoon leader confirms and disseminates available, clear and time along side alternate patrol base.

(u) Initiates priorities of next.

v. Priority of base (Platoon and Squad). Once the platoon leader is briefed by the M&O team and intelligence base is suitable for a patrol base, the leader establishes

be notified whenever work activities in order to establish the status of the patrol team. Personnel at work (determined by MENT-TIA)

11) Personnel:

- 1a) Weapons to include all passive and active weapons
- 1b) Headset also not leave return. Monitor
- 1c) Weapons, elements, and personnel to meet the conditions of terrain, activities not exempt.
- 1d) Assign location of fire to all personnel and weapons. Monitor when weapons activities and classes fire plan. (See Figure B-14)
- 1e) Establish location of fighting positions. 11) applicable

- 11) Communication with higher headquarters
- 12) Weapons and equipment maintenance.
- 13) Personal hygiene.
- 14) Messes/Make also
- 15) Rest/Sleep also maintained.
- 16) Water to/Make and team.

1. Maintain DIB digital accuracy at all times.

B. Detached CP's:

1. Patrol Base Activities

1a) Accuracy must be maintained at all times to include when moving into the patrol base. Initial reconnaissance and target acquisition. Items to be considered are:

- 11) CP is easy target avoid.
- 12) Fuel issue
- 13) Squad maintain security within assigned sector. As a minimum, 1/3 of patrol use MENT-T

14) Personnel will be alert at all times.

1b) Communication - RATTLOC must establish a radio watch together for:

- 11) Monitor radio continuously.
- 12) Posture maintenance of radio

- 13) Not as centers for distant leader.
- 14) Reception must clear.

1c) Noise and light discipline must be adhered to by everyone and supervised by the state of command. It is advantageous for the RAB team to stack out surrounding area at night light.

1d) Entering party-men must have water in function in combat.

11) A shell will must be used to initiate entry, normally a live team.

12) Must have communication with main body of unit.

13) Composites.

14) Empty crates, and used to carry with a container. This affords good noise discipline.

15) Contingency plan is issued by edge party.

16) Responsively done at squad level unless they will compromise overall system security.

11) As a minimum, regularly used to established and weapon equipment should be performed prior to every setting.

12) Personnel should act as a daily team. One man on security, one man armed with live material setting.

13) Recognition of individual and non-verbal weapons.

11) Individual weapons maintenance should be accomplished as soon as possible in assigned. Must determine if a full condition or partial cleaning is needed. Should not have more than 20% broken down at any time.

12) Greenfield - provide general activities priority for cross-trained weapon maintenance.

13) There must be set in first and change cards completed.

14) Maintenance is performed on one magazine at a time. Security is increased while maintenance is being performed.

150 Leaders specify aerial or detailed breakdown of weapons.

- 1a) Hygiene-should be performed daily.
- 1b) Food-and have a high priority on all operations.
- 1c) Nutrition plan by guidelines.
- 1d) Platoon sergeant must ensure platoon leader rests.

- 1d) Food rations of personnel.
- 1e) SCHEDULE must have a scheduled rest.

11) Stand-to procedures.

- 1a) Morning-30 minutes prior to and after MDT, get up, 100% alert.
- 1b) Night-30 minutes prior to and after MDT, equipped required for night, easy to locate, rest packed up.

1j) Sector status and addressal plan.

- 1a) Sector established as higher.
- 1b) Squad leaders send plan to platoon leader. Platoon leader draws platoon sector status from figure B-18.
- 1c) Integrate the fire plan and addressal plan to ensure suppression of enemy if patrol lines is discovered.
- 1d) Designated/established from higher to lower.

1b) Alternate patrol base indicated on all personnel:

- 1a) Contingency plan to use alternate patrol base is unusable.
- 1b) Rally point.
- 1c) Sterilize area. Eliminate and data trash with you.

1c) Unless an enemy force is much larger than the platoon, it is easier to fight and destroy the enemy than it is to leave in a disorganized manner. Upon discovery of contact, advance to an alternate position immediately.

1d) Establish priorities. Controlled left to one leader, or decentralized tasks can for himself. Team leader/squad leaders supervise.

1e) Reinforcements and supplies as needed. Platoon sergeant controls distribution.

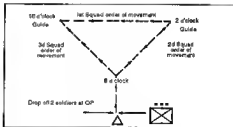


Figure B-18. Triangular Patrol Base.

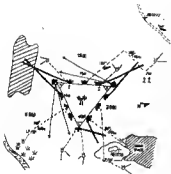


Figure 2-19. Platoon Sector Search.

2-16. MOVEMENT TO CONTACT.

C. Purpose/General: The movement to contact (MTC) is one of the five types of offensive operations. A movement to contact seeks or regains contact with the enemy. When the enemy location is unknown--and contact is made, the unit develops the situation by learning the enemy's strengths and weaknesses. Usually a platoon conducts a movement to contact as part of a larger force (i.e., company, battalion, etc.). There are two methods of conducting a movement to contact: Approach march and search and attack.

(1) **Search and Attack.** This technique is utilized when the enemy is dispersed, is expected to avoid contact, disengage or withdraw, or you need to deny his movement in an area. The search and attack method is conducted by using suitable coordinated actions to take contact. Once contact is made, the company attacks.

(2) **Approach March.** A platoon uses the approach march method as part of a larger unit. It can be tasked to the advance guard, move as part of the main body, or provide flank or rear security for the company or battalion. They can also receive shorter missions as part of the main body.

D. Standards:

Task Standards:

- (1) The area searched on time.
- (2) Enemy contact is gained and maintained.
- (3) Contact is made with earliest element (100% team).
- (4) Reports of enemy location are forwarded.
- (5) If not contact by the enemy, the platoon leader initiates a hasty attack.
- (6) 30% of enemy is killed (collective unless MILES is used), captured, or driver off. Resistance is maintained.

- (7) The glasser maintains 100 or less friendly casualties (subjective unless NILES is used).
- (8) The glasser maintains no casualties from friendly fire (subjective unless NILES is used).
- (9) The glasser is prepared to continue movement within 20 minutes of contact.
- (10) All personnel and equipment are accounted for.
- (11) 100% PIB gathered is reported to higher headquarters.

h. Fundamentals:

- (1) Make enemy contact with earliest element possible (i.e. RAB team).
- (2) Establish earliest contact possible with enemy contact.
- (3) Provides all-round security for the unit.
- (4) Suggests higher unit's course.
- (5) Reports all information rapidly and accurately and strives to gain and maintain contact with the enemy.
- (6) Requires decentralized execution.

(7) The following issues should be considered for WTC operations:

- (a) Factors of METT-T.
- (b) Soldiers Load.

g. Techniques: Both the search and attack - and approach search methods will be used during the Ranger course. Determination of which method to be utilized will be based on the unit's movement using the crawling, traveling overwatch or bounding overwatch techniques.

CONFIDENTIAL

BATTLE DRILLS

Infantry battle drills describe how platoons and squads apply fire and maneuver to commonly encountered situations. They require leaders to make decisions rapidly and to issue brief and orders quickly.

4-1. DEFINITION

FM 21-101 defines a battle drill as "a collective action rapidly executed without applying a deliberate decision-making process."

a. Characteristics of a battle drill are--

- They require minimal leader orders to accomplish and are standard throughout the Army.
- Sequential actions are vital to success in combat or critical to preserving life.
- They apply to platoon or squad units.
- They are trained responses to enemy actions or leader's orders.
- They represent mental steps followed for offensive and defensive actions in training and combat.

b. A unit's ability to accomplish its mission often depends on soldiers, leaders, and units executing key actions quickly. All soldiers and their leaders must know

their immediate reaction to enemy contact as well as follow-up actions. Drills are limited to situations requiring instantaneous responses; therefore, soldiers must execute drills instinctively. This requires close continual practice. Drills provide small units with standard procedures essential for building strength and aggressiveness.

- They identify key actions that leaders and soldiers must perform quickly.
- They provide for a smooth transition from one activity to another (or possibly, movement from offensive action to defensive action).
- They provide standardized actions that limit soldier unit collection time at platoon level and sub teams. (Soldiers perform individual tasks to DTT or SGT standard.)
- They provide the full understanding of each individual and leader, and continual practice is also required.

4-2. FORMAT

The format for drills discussed in this chapter includes the title, the SITUATION that would use the unit or the leader when initiating the drill, and REQUIRED ACTIONS in sequence, and supporting illustrations. Where applicable drills are cross-referenced with material in other chapters, other drills, or both. Training standards for tactics drills are in the platoon training plan (PTPL).

LITTLE DRILL 1. PLATOON RETACK

SITUATION: The platoon is moving as part of a larger force conducting a movement to contact or a hasty or deliberate attack.

REQUIRED ACTIONS: (Figure 4-1.)

STEP 1. Action on Enemy Contact.

a. The platoon initiates contact. The platoon leader plans when and how his team-of-fire element initiates contact with the enemy to establish a base of fire. This element must be in position and drilled later if initiates contact. If the platoon has not been alerted, STEP 1 and 2 consist of positioning the support element and identifying the enemy's positions.

b. The enemy initiates contact. If the enemy initiates contact, the platoon takes the following actions:

(1) The squad in contact reacts to contact (Battle Drill 2); it attempts to initiate suppressive fire with the line team and maneuvers the other team to attack the enemy in the flank.

(2) The platoon leader, his PATROL, the platoon PG, the squad leader of the next squad, and one machine gun team move forward to link up with the squad leader of the squad in contact.

(3) The squad leader of the DTTI squad moves to the front of his lead fire team.

(4) The platoon support moves forward with the second machine gun team and links up with the platoon leader. He assumes control of the team-of-fire element and

positions the machine gun to add suppressive fire against the enemy.

(d) The platoon leader assesses the situation. He follows the success of the squad's line attack by leading the trail squads along the covered and concealed route taken by the assaulting line team of the squad in contact.

(e) If the squad in contact cannot relieve suppressive fire, the squad leader reports to the platoon leader.

(f) The squad in contact establishes a zone of fire. The squad leader deploys his squad to provide protective, sustained fire on the enemy position. The squad leader reports his last position to the platoon leader.

(g) The assaulting squads (not in contact) take up covered and concealed positions in place and observe to the flanks and rear of the platoon.

(h) The platoon leader moves forward with his BAR/LS, the platoon PG, the squad leader of the reserve squad, and the machine gun team.

STEP 2. Locate the Enemy.

a. The squad leader of the squad in contact reports the enemy size and location, and any other information to the platoon leader. The platoon leader supplies the squad leader a assessment of the situation.

b. The squad continues to engage the enemy's position.

c. The platoon sergeant moves forward with the second machine gun team and links up with the platoon leader.

STEP 3. Suppress the Enemy.

a. The platoon leader determines if the squad in contact can gain suppressive fire against the enemy based on the volume and accuracy of the enemy's return fire.

(1) If the answer is YES, he directs the squad (with one or both machine guns) to continue suppressing the enemy.

(2) The squad in contact continues or increases enemy weapons that are firing most effectively against its normally crew served weapons.

(3) The squad in contact places screening smoke (M203) to prevent the enemy from seeing the reserve platoon.

(4) The platoon PG calls for and adjusts time based on the platoon leader's directions. The platoon leader does not call for indirect fire until continuing with his actions.

(5) If the answer is still NO, the platoon leader deploys the lead squad to provide flank and rear assaults and to guide the rest of the company forward as necessary, and reports the situation to the company commander. Normally the platoon will assume the rear-of-line element for the company and may deploy the lead squad to add suppressive fire. The platoon continues to suppress or fix the enemy with direct and indirect fire, and requests to orders from the company commander.

STEP 1. Attack.

If the squad is ordered together with the machine gunned and supports the enemy, the platoon leader determines if the remaining squad(s) can be contacted and maneuver. He makes the following assignment:

- Location of enemy positions and obstacles.
- Size of enemy forces engaging the squad. (The number of enemy machine weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires are indicators of enemy strength.)
- Humane fire.
- Covered and concealed flanking route to the enemy position.

a. If the squad is the, the platoon leader maneuvers the squad(s) into the assault:

(1) Once the platoon leader has ascertained that the support fire element is in position and providing suppressive fire, he leads the assaulting squad(s) to the assault position.

(2) Once in position, the platoon leader gives the appropriate signal for the assaulting element to fire or halt direct fire on the target (s) of the enemy position. The assault element must get up and maintain effective fire throughout the assault. However, if responsibility for direct fire from the base-of-fire element on the assault element is assigned:

(3) The platoon FO while indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.

(4) The assaulting squad(s) fight through enemy positions using fire and maneuver. The platoon leader

controls the movement of his squads. He assigns specific objectives for each squad and designates the man(s) to be held as base maneuver element. (The base-of-fire element must be able to identify the base of the assaulting squad(s).)

(5) In the assault, the squad leader determines the way in which he will move the elements of his squad over the volume and accuracy of enemy fire against his squad and the amount of cover afforded by the terrain. (During fire in all cases, each soldier uses individual combat techniques as appropriate.)

(6) The squad leader designates one fire man to support the movement of the other squads by fire.

(7) The squad leader determines a distance or direction for the squads to move. He emphasizes use of the fire lanes.

(8) Soldiers must maintain contact with each other and leaders.

(9) Soldiers time their firing and reloading in order to maintain their rate of fire.

(10) The moving fire man proceeds to the next covered position. Squads use the same technique when assaulting. Soldiers move in rushes as appropriate.

(11) The squad leader directs the next man to move.

(12) If necessary, the squad leader directs soldiers to bound forward as individuals within buddy teams. Soldiers maintain their movement and fight with each other within the buddy team. They maintain contact with their team leader.

10) Soldiers line up covered positions. They await the next covered position before moving. They either rush forward in ones that is essential, or use high or low crawl techniques based on terrain and enemy force.

11. If the answer is NO, or the resulting situation effect defines to have, the platoon leader deploys the squad to support the enemy and reports to the company commander. The platoon continues suppressing enemy positions and reports to the officers of the company commander.

STEP 5. Consolidate and Reorganize.

a. Consolidate. Once the assaulting squad(s) has seized the enemy position, the platoon leader establishes local security. (The platoon must prepare to defeat an enemy counterattack. The platoon is most vulnerable at the conclusion of the assault.)

10) The platoon leader signals for the Pass-at-Arms element to move up into designated positions.

11) The platoon leader assigns weapons of fire for each squad.

12) The platoon leader positions lay weapons to cover the most dangerous avenue(s) of approach.

13) The platoon sergeant issues coordination for resupply requests.

14) Soldiers take up ready defensive positions.

15) The platoon leader and his PD develop a quick fire plan.

16) The squad(s) place out OPs to warn of enemy counterattacks.

b. Reorganize.

10) The platoon performs the following tasks immediately after it completes the consolidation of the objective:

- 1a) Reestablish the chain of command.
- 1b) Reestablish and reassign accountability.
- 1c) Reassign weapons and equipment load.
- 1d) Reestablish critical command leaders, NCO, other.
- 1e) Treat casualties and evacuate wounded.
- 1f) Fill vacancies in key positions.
- 1g) Search, seize, identify, tag, and record OPs to collection points.
- 1h) Collect and report enemy information and material.

11) Squad leaders provide ammunition, casualty, and equipment load reports to the platoon leader.

12) The platoon leader consolidates ACC reports and passes them to the company commander for ID.

13) The platoon continues the mission after receiving guidance from the company commander. The platoon follows the success of the platoon's planning attack.

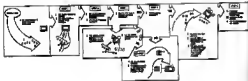


Figure 4-1. Platoon attack.

BATTLE DRILL 1A. SQUAD ATTACK.

SITUATION: The squad is moving as part of the platoon conducting a movement, to contact or a heavy or deliberate attack.

REQUIRED ACTIONS:

STEP 1. Action on Enemy Contact.

a. Soldiers receiving fire take up assumed positions that afford protection from enemy fire (cover) and observation (concealment).

b. The fire team in contact immediately returns heavy volume of suppressive fire in the direction of the enemy.

(1) Soldiers in the fire team in contact move to positions (around or across) from which they can fire their weapons, position themselves to ensure that they have observation, fields of fire, cover, and concealment. They continue to fire and report enemy or suspected enemy positions to the fire team leader.

(2) The squad leader directs first volley tracers or standard fire weapons.

(3) The fire team not in contact takes cover and conceals positions in place and advances to the flank and rear of the squad.

(4) The squad leader reports contact to the platoon leader and moves toward the fire team in contact.

STEP 2. Locate the Enemy.

a. Using sight and sound, the fire team in contact acquires known or suspected enemy positions.

b. The fire team in contact begins to place well-aimed fire on suggested enemy positions.

c. The squad leader moves to a position where he can observe the enemy and assess the situation.

d. The squad leader requests immediate suppression (although fire is usually done anyway) through the platoon leader.

e. The platoon leader reports the enemy size and location, and any other information to the platoon leader.

As the platoon leader looks forward, he transmits the squad leader's assessment of the situation.

STEP 3. Suppress the Enemy.

The squad leader determines if the fire team in contact can gain suppression fire based on the volume and accuracy of the enemy fire.

1. If the answer is YES, the fire team leader continues to suppress the enemy:

(1) The fire team continues or resumes enemy over-exposed enemy fire.

(2) The fire team leader sends orders on the enemy location to platoon leader.

(3) The fire team leader continues to control fire using direct or indirect fire commands. Fire must be well-aimed and continue at a sustained rate with no lulls.

(4) Squad leader fires their weapons so that both are not reloading their weapons at the same time.

b. If the answer is NO, the squad leader then transfers the fire team out in contact to establish a support-by-fire position. He reports the situation to the platoon leader, normally, the squad will become the team of fire support for the platoon. The squad continues to suppress the enemy and requests to order from the platoon leader. (The platoon leader, his BARCEL, the platoon HQ, and support gun team, and the squad leader is the fire team, or will be the platoon weapons and the other machine gun team, are already moving forward (to Battle Drill 1, Platoon Support.)

STEP 4. Attack.

If the fire team in contact can suppress the enemy, the squad leader determines if the fire team can in contact and maneuver. He makes the following assessment:

- Location of enemy positions and obstacles.
- Size of enemy force engaging the squad. (The number of enemy friendly weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires and instances of enemy strength.)
- Vulnerable lines.
- Covered and concealed flanking routes to the enemy position.

c. If the answer is YES, the squad leader maneuvers the fire team to the objective.

(1) The squad leader transfers the fire team in contact to support the movement of the other fire team. He then leads the assaulting fire team along the covered and concealed route to the line of the enemy position. (The assaulting fire team must work at the platoon fire superiority throughout the assault. Movement of responsibility for direct fires from the supporting fire team to the assaulting fire team is critical.)

12) Once in position, the squad leader gives the breachers the signal for the assaulting fire team to lift ladders or shift ladders to the assault line of the enemy position.

13) The assaulting fire team fights through enemy positions using fire and movement. The assaulting fire team must be able to identify the rear flank of the assaulting fire team.

14) The team leader determines whether to move the fire team by bounding buddy teams or by individual covered techniques. The team maintains the same wedge formation.

15) Soldiers move by rushes or crawling. Someone is always firing while some move. At the end of each rush, soldiers take up covered and connected positions and resume firing.

16) If the answer is NO on the assaulting fire team assault continues to drive, the squad leader employs the assaulting fire team to add fire power against the enemy against the station leader and requests instructions. The squad continues successfully enemy positions and reports to the orders of the platoon leader.

STEP 5. Consolidation and Demolition

17) Once the assaulting fire team has seized the enemy position, the squad leader establishes local security. The squad leader must quickly determine to defend any enemy counterattacks. At the conclusion of the assault, the team is not vulnerable.

18) The squad leader signals for the assaulting fire team to move up into a prepared position.

19) The squad leader assigns sectors of fire for both fire teams.

20) The squad leader positions key weapons.

21) All weapons are in ready offensive positions.

22) The squad leader develops an initial fire support plan against all enemy counterattacks. The fire plan moves up, as soon as the fire is the station leader for further development.

23) The squad leader seeks an OP in case of enemy activity.

18. The squad performs the following tasks:

18.1 Reestablish the state of progress.

18.2 Reestablish all necessary ammunition.

18.3 Use preserved weapons first.

18.4 Reestablish critical equipment (the compass, radio, NBC, etc.).

18.5 Treat casualties and execute courses.

18.6 Fill vacancies in key positions.

18.7 Search, silence, reorganize, reequip, and speed OPs to collection state.

18.8 Collect and report enemy information and material.

19. Team leaders provide ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports to the squad leader.

20. The squad leader coordinates the ACE report and passes it to the platoon leader for station sergeant.

21. The squad continues the attack after receiving instructions from the platoon leader. (The station follows the success of the squad's flanking attack with the remaining attack as part of the station attack.)

22. The squad leader reports the situation to the platoon leader.



Figure 4-2. Squad attack.

4-2. BATTLE DRILLS. Survivability may well depend upon a unit's ability to react rapidly and aggressively in certain situations that may be encountered during a training session. Examples of situations that a unit could encounter are outlined below together with an example of a reaction that could be anticipated in advance. These are single courses of action which require a series of commands and signals to initiate, and could be initiated by any member of the unit. They must, by design, be simple, executed swiftly, and be well rehearsed.

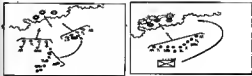


Figure 4-3. React in Contact.

4 a. React in Contact (Platoon/Platoon). The enemy fires on the platoon/squad. The platoon/squad immediately assumes the best available covered and concealed positions and returns fire; locates the enemy and places well-aimed fire on their positions immediately (Figure 4-3).

1. Platoon/squad leaders immediately assume best available covered positions and immediately return fire when an enemy engages the platoon.

2. Platoon/squad leader locate actual or suspected enemy positions and engage them with well-aimed fire.

3. Platoon/squad leader make contact (visual or orally) with one or both end flanks.

4. Squad leaders make frequent visual contact with squad leader and indicate the location of the enemy positions.

5. Leaders (visually or orally) check status of personnel.

6. The squad leaders make frequent visual contacts with the platoon leader.

7. The platoon leader hit one by surprise. They follow his direction and do as he directs.

8. Relay all commands and signals from the platoon leader of contact.

9. The platoon/squad leader make a quick assessment of the situation (enemy size, location, and so forth). If needed or as appropriate source of earlier leadership fire and movement, provide a base of fire, break contact.

10. Break Contact Platoon/Squad. Squad/platoon is moving and the enemy fire on the unit. Squad/platoon leader orders unit to break contact (Figure 4-4).

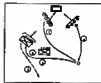
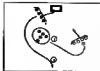


Figure 4-4. Break Contact.

1. The leader gives the order to break contact.
2. The leader designates which element will be the support element, and which element will move to initiate break contact. For a platoon, the initial support element will usually be a line team and the initial movement element will be a line team. For a squad, it will be a squad.
3. The squad/platoon leader orders a retreat and direction (lines a block, "Hilltop") is given.
4. The support element increases the rate of fire to suppress the enemy.

A c. Break to Retreat (Platoon/Squad). Enemy Initiates retreat (Figure 4-5).

1. Near Enemy. Within best possible range (200').
 - a) Depending on the terrain, personnel in the bill team will carry out one of the following two actions:
 - (1) If cover is not available, without order or signal, immediately assume the prone position, return fire, and then conceal or get under ground.
 - (2) If cover is available, without order or signal,

Immediately upon the nearest covered position, return fire, and throw ammunition and smoke grenades.

101 Immediately after explosion of ammunition grenades, personnel in the hill zone return fire and assault the enemy position using fire and movement.

102 Personnel not in the hill zone identify the enemy location and then give accurate coordinates fire against enemy position. Fire is omitted as the personnel in the hill zone begin to assault.

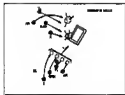


Figure 4-2. Assault on Hill Assault.

103 Personnel in the hill zone continue the assault in silence until the ambush or until contact is broken.

3. War Ambush: Beyond hand grenade range (Figure 4-4).

101 Personnel in the hill zone, without contact or signal, assume the prone position and immediately return fire. They use the best available covered position and continue well-aimed fire at the ambush position. Smoke grenades are used to limit enemy observation of the hill

zone and effect fire ability to place aimed fire into the hill zone.

102 The element not in the hill zone continues the assault until the ambush is eliminated or contact is broken.

103 Squad/Platoon leader requests indirect fire when the enemy withdraws or the ammunition balance the element is far enough to avoid friendly casualties. Use photo to report enemy observation.

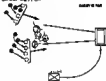


Figure 4-3. War Ambush.

4. React to Indirect Fire (Platoon/Squad). Any member of the platoon starts "incoming" on a round impact. Personnel run out of the impact area in the direction and for the distance ordered by the platoon leader/squad leader, and seek protection of overhead cover in the fighting position. The platoon reacts according to the situation they are in at the time.

(1) While Moving:

101 Any member of the platoon starts "incoming"

(8) Squad/Battle members must move from position immediately.

(9) When directly line hostile, the leader gives the direction and distance to move. For example, "Left 7 steps, two hundred yards."

(10) The pilot must run out of the impact area in the direction set for the director indicated.

(11) When in Defensive Position.

(a) Any member will be "loading."

(b) Squad/Battle members seek protection under the overhead cover of their fighting position and the protective coats.

4-3. AIR DEFENSE. To effectively defend against air attack, units must make maximum use of cover, concealment, camouflage, dispersion, and early warning. The unit may in event an air attack is to be expected. Units must also be proficient in the use of their weapons in air defense.

Enemy aircraft can attack any ground force whose location has been discovered. The sighting of a few soldiers or vehicles can lead to the destruction of a whole unit, even if the rest of the unit is well hidden.

a. Action When Attacked. The pilot must be given as early as possible if troops in the open are to have a chance to take cover. This warning is the responsibility of every man in the unit and is given by whistle, voice, radio, or any other method.

b. Engagement of Hostile Aircraft. Rules for firing at aircraft vary. These are guidelines.

(1) First, positively identify the aircraft or hostiles. It is usually the defender's duty to fire at it, the unit may rise first. However, react only when certain the aircraft is actually attacking the unit in the area.

(2) If aircraft attack the unit, the unit returns fire.

(3) If aircraft are not attacking, the unit withdraws until it is no longer in position.

(4) Small arms may be fired at attacking aircraft during an attack on the unit. All unit members must be certain the air space through which the plane will fly. They should not try to break the plane but concentrate fire on the area through which the plane must fly.

(5) General. For aircraft flying directly toward the unit, troops rise slightly above the nose (Figure 4-2).



Figure 4-7. Engaging aircraft diving directly at the unit.

(d) Jet Aircraft. To engage a jet plane diving a crossing course, all troops aim and fire their weapons two football-field lengths in front of the plane (Figure 4-8).



Figure 4-8. Engaging jet diving a crossing course.

(e) Low Performance Aircraft. For helicopters and propeller-driven aircraft, troops aim and fire at a point approximately a football-field length in front of the aircraft (Figure 4-9).



Figure 4-9. Engaging a low performance aircraft diving a crossing course.

- a. Fire Control. The leader can control the fire in one of two ways:
 - (1) He can order SET, FINE, and troops aim to do so shoot as fast as they can UNTIL the plane passes.
 - (2) He can select reference points.
 - (a) The leader alerts his troops to get ready.
 - (b) As an aircraft approaches a reference point, he orders, REFERENCE POINT 2, FIRE.
 - (c) All troops point their weapons at the reference point, raise their weapons at a 45-degree angle, and fire (Figure 4-10).



Figure 2-19. Firing by reference point.

2-4. KNOCK OUT A BUNKER.

1. General. During a movement to contact or attack, rarely will one bunker by itself be encountered; typically bunkers are grouped and prepared as part of a larger defensive system. When a platoon or squad encounters bunkers, enemy pre-arranged means tend to be destroyed or suppressed first, friendly positions and movement must be obscured by smoke, and suppressive fire must be maintained at the threat point.

2. The platoon initiates contact:

- a. The squad in contact establishes a base of fire.
- b. The platoon leader, his TOPLD, platoon PO, and one machine gun team move forward to lift up with the squad leader at the point in contact.
- c. The platoon sergeant moves forward with the second machine gun team and assumes control of the base-of-fire element.

- d. The base-of-fire element--
 - (1) Destroys or suppresses enemy pre-arranged means.
 - (2) Obscures the enemy position with smoke (M203).
 - (3) Sustains suppressive fire at the lowest possible level.
- e. The platoon PO calls for art attacks (indirect fire) as directed by the platoon sergeant.
7. The platoon leader determines that he can proceed by identifying:
 - a. The enemy bunkers, other supporting positions, and any obstacles.
 - b. The size of the enemy force (keeping the platoon (the number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires and indicators of enemy strength.)
 - c. A vulnerable point at or near the bunker.
 - d. Covered and concealed flanking routes to the front of the bunker.
8. The platoon leader determines which bunker is to be eliminated first and directs the squad that is contact to break it out.
9. If necessary, the platoon sergeant repositions a squad, fire team, or machine gun team to isolate the bunker as well as to continue suppressive fire.
4. The assaulting squad, with the platoon leader and his TOPLD, move along the covered and concealed route and take action to knock out the bunker.
 - a. The squad leader moves with the assaulting fire team along the covered and concealed route to the front of the bunker.
 - (1) The assaulting fire team approaches the bunker from the blind side and takes out each fire team of the base-of-fire element.
 - (2) Soldiers constantly watch for other bunkers or enemy positions to support it.

8. Upon reaching the last covered and concealed position--

101 The fire team leader and the automatic rifleman remain in place and aim their fire to suppressing the bunker (includes the use of LAW/ATAC).

102 The squad leader positions himself where he can keep control of his team. On the squad leader's signal, the team-at-fire element lifts their or other fires to the opposite side of the bunker from the assaulting fire team's approach.

103 The grenadier and rifleman continue forward to the ditch side of the bunker. One soldier takes up a covered position near the exit. The other soldier cooks off two smoke grenades a grenade, about 100M OUT, and throws it through an opening.

104 After the grenade detonates, the soldier covering the exit enters the bunker, firing short bursts, to destroy the enemy. The soldier who throws the grenade should not do this first as to clear the bunker.

9. The squad leader inspects the bunker to ensure that it has been destroyed. He reports, reorganizes as needed, and continues the mission. The platoon follows the success of the attack against the bunker and continues the attack of other bunkers.

7. The platoon leader repositions team-at-fire squads as necessary to continue to isolate and suppress the remaining bunkers, and maintain suppressive fires.

8. The platoon leader repositions one of the team-at-fire squads to move up and knock out the next bunker or, directs the assaulting squad to continue and knock out the next bunker.

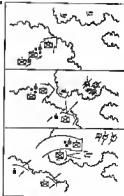
NOTE: The platoon leader must consider the condition of his assaulting squad(s) ammunition and equipment and provide squads as necessary.

8. On the platoon leader's signal, the team-at-fire element lifts their or other fires to the opposite side of the bunker from which the squad is assaulting.

9. At the squad's fire, the platoon PD shifts indirect fires to locate enemy positions.

10. The assaulting squad should continue to knock out the next bunker (see paragraph 6, above).

11. The platoon leader reports, reorganizes as necessary, and continues the mission. The company follows up the success of the platoon attack and continues to assault enemy positions.



4-5. ENTER BUILDING/CLEAR ROOM.

Discussion: Operating as part of a larger force, the squad is moving and identifies an enemy force in a building.

Required Actions: (See figures 4-12 and 4-13)

NOTE: The discussion that follows assumes that the necessary squad is supported only by the platoon organic weapons. The preferred method of entering a building is to use a lead entry gas sound, direct line military sound, or YCM, Mags, or Hall line sound to clear the lead room. Additionally, using MOUT scenarios may require direct application of lineages. This is done at a MOUT environment where the enemy is engaged with conventional. The presence of civilians gas restricts the use of flame and smoke the combat power available to a platoon leader. His platoon may have to engage with "no line" areas. Rules of Engagement (ROE) can prohibit the use of certain weapons until a specific handling action takes place. The use of lead gas and suppressive line is used when any of conditions is present conventional conventional and restricted damage. All leaders must be aware of the ROE. They must include the tactics and of weapons in their planning for MOUT situations. This includes how the platoon will employ its organic weapons including weapons and other weapon systems if any have to support for outside, AC 120 or M4A1 aircraft. They must coordinate the use of marking systems to ground situation use to identify line. FM 90-10 and FM 90-10-1 provide additional techniques for platoon and squads in MOUT.

1. The line team initiating contact establishes a zone of line and suppresses the enemy to and around the building.

2. The squad leader determines that he can maneuver by identifying--

- a. The building and any obstacles
- b. The size of the enemy force engaging the squad.
- c. An entry point. Identifying the team should enter the building at the highest level possible.
- d. A covered and concealed route to the entry point.

3. The line team in contact--

- a. Destroys or suppresses enemy reorganized weapons first.
- b. Occupies the enemy position with smoke (MOCOT).
- c. Sustains suppressive fires.

4. The squad leader directs the line team in contact to support the entry of the other squad team into the building.

5. If necessary, the supporting fire team repeatedly re-enters the building as well as continue suppressive fire. Ideally, the platoon has added its supporting team against the enemy.

6. The squad leader designates the entry point of the building. The platoon and squad shift down fire and continue to suppress the enemy in adjacent positions and to inside the building. The platoon AC 120 line indirect line or sniffs then beyond the building.

7. The squad leader and the assaulting line team operate the building and position themselves at either side of the entrance. Soldiers should avoid entering buildings through doors and windows, because they will usually be covered by enemy weapons inside the building.

5. Following each-of them then reports neutral, and shouting FWD OUT, the lead soldier of the assaulting team then proceeds and opens a passage into the building.

7. After the explosion, the lead soldier enters the building and positions himself to the right (right) of the entrance, up against the wall, engages all identified or likely enemy positions with snuff, and leads of the assaulting team, and across the room. The rest of the team proceeds immediately entered by outside the building.

8. The lead soldier opens the door and gives the soldier entering the room to move to the left or right. The team enters in the door tactics where the lead soldier positions himself and gives the command LEFT MAN IN, LEFT (or RIGHT). The lead man shouts COMING IN, LEFT (RIGHT), enters the building, positions himself to the left of the entrance, up against the wall, and clears the room. Once in position, he shouts BEST MAN IN (RIGHT OR LEFT).

9. Depending on the enemy's situation, the size of the entry and the layout of the room, the soldiers may enter the room simultaneously after the passage is cleared. The soldier takes the right side of the entry square, firing from left to right, and moves to right side back to the wall. If the room is large, the soldier on the left enters from the left, and moves from right to left, and moves to the left with his back to the wall. One soldier takes right, the other two, to proceed right of one another. The enemy gets more firepower in the room more quickly, but is more difficult and hazardous room practice. Once both soldiers are in position, the lead soldier gives the command LEFT MAN IN (RIGHT OR LEFT).

10. The assaulting fire team leader shouts COMING IN (RIGHT OR LEFT), enters the building initially moving left or right and against the wall, and positions himself where he can control the actions of his team. He does not block the entrance way. He makes a quick assessment of the size and shape of the room, and begins to clear the room. He determines if the assaulting man in the team is required to assist in clearing the room.

11. If the team leader decides to bring the lead man in, he shouts BEST MAN IN LEFT (or RIGHT). The lead man in the fire team shouts COMING IN LEFT (or RIGHT), enters the building, and begins to clear through the room.

12. If the team leader decides not to bring the lead man in, he shouts BEST MAN, SNUFF LEFT. The lead man remains outside the building and provides security from there. The team leader then directs the soldier on the right of the entrance to begin clearing. The team leader reports to the squad leader and then assumes the duties of the soldier on the right of the entrance to provide support.

13. Once the room is cleared, the team leader signals to the squad leader that the room is cleared.

14. The squad leader enters the building and starts the entry point is established with its wall BCP. The squad leader determines whether or not his squad can continue to clear rooms and still maintain suppressive fire outside the building. Normally, it takes a platoon to clear a building.

13. The squad leader and assault fire team enter the entrance of the next room to be signaled and position themselves on either side of the entrance. The squad leader and signaller will subsequently room by repeating the actions described in paragraphs 6 through 12, above.

14. The squad leader directs the team to continue and clear the next room. The squad leader rotates fire teams as necessary to keep the soldiers fresh, to equitably distribute the dangerous duties, and to continue the momentum of the attack.

15. The squad leader follows the fire team that is clearing to ensure that several rooms are properly cleared in accordance with the unit SOP.

16. The squad leader assesses the situation to determine if he can continue clearing the building. He reports the situation to the platoon leader. The platoon follows the success of the entry into the building.

17. The squad consolidating its position in the building and then reorganized as necessary. Leaders reassign duties.

NOTE: Hardly the squad/platoon will assault every 10 buildings with large caliber weapons (particularly if teams with caliber .50, 81mm, or tanks are available).

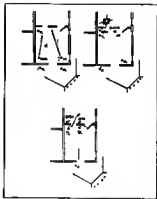


Figure 4-12. Enter a building (Signal).

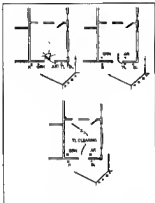


Figure 4-13. Clear a building entrance.

4-6. ENTER/CLEAR A TRENCH/LINE.

a. **Situation:** The platoon is attacking as part of a larger force and locates an enemy in a trench line. The platoon enters and establishes a base of fire. The platoon leader determines that he has sufficient combat power to enter and assault the trench line.

b. **Required Actions:** (See figures 4-6a and 4-6d).

1. The platoon leader directs the squad to enter the trench and secure a foothold.

2. The platoon leader designates the entry point of the trench line and the direction of movement once the platoon begins clearing.

3. The platoon sergeant positions soldiers and assault guns to suppress the trench and isolate the entry point.

4. The assaulting squad executes actions to enter the trench and establish a foothold. The squad leader directs the fire team to assault and the fire team is supported by fire initially, then follows and supports the assaulting fire team. He designates the entry point of the trench line.

5. The squad leader and the assault fire team move to the last covered and concealed position short of the entry point.

(a) The squad leader works the entry point.

(b) The heavy-fire element should direct fires away from the entry point and continue to suppress adjacent enemy positions or isolate the trench as required.

(c) The assault fire team leader and the automatic riflemen remain in a position short of the trench to and suppressive fires for the initial entry.

111. The two remaining soldiers of the assault fire team withdraw and immediately continue toward the entry point. They move to cover or by crawling.

112. The squad leader positions himself where he can best control the team.

113. The first two soldiers withdraw and immediately at the assault line team move to the edge of the trench, crawling to the front set on their hands or the squad leader's command. Post-off grenades are thrown backward, about 1000 GUT, and then the grenades into the trench.

114. After receiving the last grenade detonate, the soldiers roll into the trench, landing on their feet, and back-to-back. They fire their weapons down the trench in opposite directions. Immediately, both soldiers move in opposite directions from the trench, continuing to fire throughout the run. Each soldier should be ready to react to the first sound of interaction. Both soldiers halt and take up positions to start any enemy movement toward the entry point.

115. Upon detonation of the grenades, the assault fire team leader and the remaining soldiers immediately move to the entry point and enter the trench. The squad leader directs them to one of the secured corners or intersections to relieve the riflemen or grenadier who then rejoins the lobby team at the opposite end of the trench.

116. The squad leader remains at the entry point and works it.

117. The squad leader reports on the platform leader that he has entered the trench and secured a foothold. The platform follows the success or the nature of the foothold with the remainder of the platoon as part of the platform actions to clear a trench line.

118. The squad sergeant as necessary, leader's redistribute ammunition.

119. The platform leader directs one of the team-of-five element squads to move into the trench and begin clearing it to the location of movement from the foothold.

120. The team-of-five element repetitions as necessary to continue successive lines.

121. The platform leader moves into the trench with the assaulting squad.

122. The assaulting squad passes the squad that has secured the foothold and remains constant to take the lead and clear the trench.

123. The squad leader collects a lead fire team and a trail fire team.

124. The lead fire team and the trail leader move to the forward-most secure corner or intersection. The squad leader takes the team securing that corner or intersection that the squad is ready to continue clearing the trench. The trail fire team follows maintaining visual contact with the last soldier of the lead team.

125. Throughout this technique, the team leader positions himself at the rear of the line team to have direct control (physically, if necessary) of the soldiers. Other soldiers in the line team create the lead. Soldiers receive the lead to change positions and provide grenades. Maintaining the lead provides constant suppressing fire from the trench and establishes the position of the squad as the squad clears the trench.

13) The lead time team covers the element securing the trench.

14) The lead soldier of the time team covers element of the soldier securing the corner or intersection, top fire, and announces TAKING THE LEAD.

15) The soldier securing the corner or intersection acknowledges that he is handing over the lead by shouting OKAY. He allows the time team to pass him.

16) The last time team starts clearing in the direction of movement. They arrive at a corner or intersection.

17) Hearing the back-sit time team's arrival and shouting FIRE OUT, the second soldier prepares and throws a grenade toward the enemy.

18) Upon detonation at the grenade, the lead soldier moves around the corner firing three round bursts and advancing to his team. The entire time team follows him to the next corner or intersection.

19) The team leader

17) Follows immediately behind the lead team.

18) Ensures that the trailing time team moves up and is ready to pass the lead as he directs.

19) Orders time team or necessary to keep his soldiers fresh and to regulate the movement of the attack.

20) Requests instant fire, if necessary, through the platoon leader.

1. At each corner or intersection, the lead time team performs the same actions described above paragraphs 11.

2. If the lead soldier finds that he is ready out at attention before reaching a corner or intersection, he announces PASS.

11) Immediately, the lead soldier steps and moves against one side of the trench, ready to let the rest of the team pass. He continues to fire his weapon toward the trench in the direction of movement.

12) The next soldier ensures that he has a full magazine, moves up through the lead soldier, top fire and announces TAKING THE LEAD.

13) The lead soldier acknowledges that he is handing over the lead by shouting OKAY, positions submachine gun, and the squad continues forward.

14. The trailing time team crosses intersection and starts the route within the trench as the squad moves forward. The trailing time team leader ensures that platoon leader follows his duty team to maintain security.

15. The team leader reports the progress of the clearing operation. The back-sit time team must be able to identify the location of the lead time team in the trench at all times.

9. The platoon leader orders squad to leave position trench and to maintain the perimeter at the result.

10. The platoon sergeant calls toward position steadily and organizes team to move it forward into the trench.

11. The team-of-five platoon ensures that all friendly forces move into the trench ONLY through the designated entry point. (All movement must be made in the trench to avoid trenchside.)

12. The platoon leader reports to the company commander that the trench line is secured, or that he is no longer able to continue clearing.

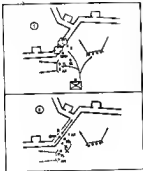


Figure 4-24. Enter a trench (squad).

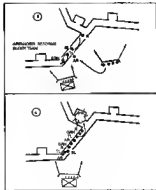


Figure 4-25. Clear a trench line (squad) (continued).

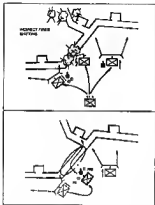


Figure 4-15. Clear a breaching position.

4-9. CORRECT INITIAL BREACH OF A MINED WIRE OBSTACLE.

Situations The platoon is operating as part of a larger force. The lead squad identifies a MFB obstacle, reinforced with mines, that cannot be bypassed and enemy positions on the far side of the obstacle.

Required Actions: (Figures 4-16 and 4-17).

1. The platoon leader, his BATTAL, platoon HQ, and one machine gun team move forward to link up with the squad leader of the lead squad.

2. The platoon leader determines that he can maneuver by identifying:

(1) The obstacle and enemy positions covering it by fire.

(2) The size of the enemy force engaging the squad. (The number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires are indicators of enemy strength.)

(3) A breach point.

(4) A covered and unobscured route to the breach point.

(5) A supporting position large enough for a squad reinforced with machine guns.

3. The platoon leader directs one squad to support the movement of another squad(s) to the breach point. He indicates the supporting-fire position, the route to it, the enemy position to be suppressed, the breach point, and the route that the rest of the platoon will take to it. He also gives instructions for indirect and sniping fires.

e. The platoon leader designates one squad as the breach squad, and the remaining squad, as the assault squad once the breach has been made. The assault squad may add its fire to the forward-fire element. Normally, it follows the covered and concealed route of the breach squad but resubmits through immediately after the breach is made.

e. The assault squad moves to and establishes a base of fire.

f. The platoon sergeant moves forward to the lead-at-fire element with the second machine gun team and assumes control of the element.

g. On the platoon leader's signal, the forward-fire element--

- (1) Destroys or suppresses enemy crew-served weapons, if any.
- (2) Occupies the enemy position with smoke (M203).
- (3) Submits aggressive fires at the lowest possible level.

h. The platoon leader designates the breach point and leads the breach and assault squads along the covered and concealed route to it.

i. The platoon PD calls for and assigns indirect fires as directed by the platoon leader.

j. The breach squad executes actions to breach the obstacle.

(1) The squad leader directs one fire team to support the movement of the other fire team to the breach point.

(2) The squad leader identifies the breach point.

(3) The forward-fire element continues to provide aggressive fires and isolates the breach point.

(4) The breaching fire team, with the squad leader, moves to the breach point using the covered and concealed route.

(a) The squad leader and breaching fire team leader employ enemy procedures to secure the breach point. The platoon sergeant's element shifts direct fires away from the breach point and continues to support key enemy positions. The platoon PD lifts indirect fires or shifts them toward the obstacle.

(a) The breaching fire team leader positions himself and the automatic rifleman on one flank of the breach point to provide flank security.

(a) The grenadier and rifleman of the breaching fire team crawl to wires, and cut the wire obstacle, setting their path as they proceed. Bangalore is preferred, if available.

(a) Once the obstacle has been breached, the breaching fire team leader and the automatic rifleman move to the far side of the obstacle and take up covered and concealed positions with the grenadier and rifleman. The team leader signals to the squad leader when they are in position and ready to support.

(a) The squad leader signals the supporting fire team leader to move his fire team up and through the breach. He then moves through the obstacle and joins the breaching fire team, leaving the grenadier and rifleman of the supporting fire team on the rear side of the breach to guide the rest of the platoon through.

6. Using the base covered and concealed route as the dressing fire base, the supporting fire team moves through the breach and takes up covered and concealed positions on the far side.

7. The squad leader reports to the platoon leader and consolidates as needed.

8. The platoon leader leads the assault squad through the breach in the obstacle and positions them beyond the breach to support the movement of the remainder of the platoon or assault the enemy positions covering the obstacle.

9. The platoon leader reports the situation to the company commander and directs his support-fire element to come up and through the obstacle. The platoon leader leaves guide to guide the company through the breach point.

10. The company follows up the success of the platoon as it assaults the breach and continues the assault against the enemy positions.

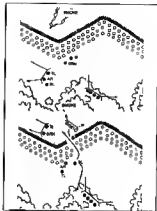


Figure 4-19. Conduct initial breach of a wire obstacle (squad).

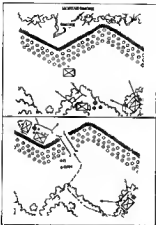


Figure 4-27. Connect left-hand branch of a steel wire obstacle (platoon).

LOOKING AHEAD

COMMUNICATIONS

7-1. The timely needs of communications for most units with any type combat retreating mission will normally be radio. Unit leaders should be aware and know the operating range of their communications equipment as it is essential to maintain communications with higher elements at all times. They also should know how to increase the range of their communications equipment by expedient antennas. It is critical that operators maintain communications security through the proper use of the SOI, using secret to the enemy deciphering and other authorized codes, when using these equipment facilities, ensure that the antenna is not mounted and the whip antenna is kept in a vertical position when transmitting. Most antenna transmit require line of sight for most effective communications, therefore leading leaders to think and move in a more local location such as a hilltop, tree or ridge. In some cases, the use of a directional antenna to increase detection by enemy forces may be necessary. While radio is the key means of communications the leader must weigh the advantages and disadvantages to determine its use during retreating operations.

ADVANTAGES

Easy to use
Long range
Very mobile

DISADVANTAGES

Can be jammed
Can be intercepted
Vulnerable to direction
Special equipment

7-2. Communications Security:

a. The disadvantages of radio communications means security to become an essential element when transmitting. Listed below are some methods to aid in communications security:

(1) Unit members should constantly practice sound security.

- 12) DO NOT transmit if it can be avoided.
- 13) Change frequencies and call signs often as possible (SOI).
- 14) YOU SHOULD use a varied transmission schedule, so the probability of enemy intercept can be reduced.
- 15) Encode all messages or use voice secure equipment.

- 16) Whenever possible, use directional antennas.
- 17) Use SOI codes and dually coded to reduce transmission time.

d. If the enemy intercepts your transmission, he may try to use jamming techniques. To determine if you are being jammed, transmit the antenna, if the noise stops and starts again when you reposition the antenna you are probably being jammed. If the noise continues after the antenna is disconnected internal radio problems exist. Employ the following countermeasures to reduce the effects of jamming:

- 11) If the radio has variable power, use the highest setting.
- 12) Relocate the radio set, terrain may mask the jamming signal.
- 13) Use a directional antenna, this will concentrate your radio signal in the direction of the receiving station.
- 14) Turn the squelch off, this may raise the level of the desired signal.

e. During jamming the operator should continue to operate. This will deny the enemy knowledge of his systems. Never relinquish jamming in the clear. All messages should be authenticated, in case the enemy tries to "use initiative reception" (inserts the voice of friendly operators). The key believed against all electronic warfare efforts by the enemy are: use all other frequencies.

- 11) DO NOT let the enemy know where you are. DO NOT transmit unless it is mission essential.
- 12) Keep the terrain between you and the enemy, it will help hide out enemy signals. Once you transmit, you're

- 5. Typical Radio Planning Tables
 - 11) AN/PRC-28 300 meter short antenna, 1.5 m at initial loss, antenna
 - 12) AN/PRC-70 4M 25 to 11k miles, AM SW 25 to 11k miles with whip antenna, 25 miles with double antenna.
 - 13) AN/PRC-37 4 to 15 miles
 - 14) AN/PRC-116 1-1.5k short whip/3-5k long whip antenna.

7-3. ANTENNAS:

a. Repair Techniques. When a whip antenna is broken into two sections, the portion of the antenna that is broken off can be connected to the portion attached to the base by joining the two sections as shown in figure 7-1. Use the method in figure 7-1(a) when both parts of the whip are symmetrical and flexible. Use the method in figure 7-1(c) when the whip portion is so badly broken it cannot be used or it is lost. To repair the antenna to its original length, use a piece of wire that is the same length as the missing whip, then lash the pole support securely to both sections of the antenna.



Figure 7-1. Emergency repair of broken whip antenna.

d. Antenna Insulators. If the transmitting element of a field antenna is not properly insulated, it may become shorted to the ground and be ineffective. Many times can be used as field expedient insulators. The most items are glass or plastic which include plastic spacers, buttons, bottle caps, and plastic cups. Wood and rope or both in that order are less effective than plastic or glass, but are still better than no insulation at all. The supporting element—the actual antenna wire—should touch only the antenna terminal and should be physically separated from all other objects, other than the supporting insulator. Figure 7-2 shows various methods of making expedient insulators.



Figure 7-2. Field Expedient Insulators

7-4. Expedient Antennas. Expedient antennas are antennas designed and constructed by the user to increase the range of tactical radio sets. Antennas that are components of tactical radio sets are, for the most part, vertical antennas resulting in the signal being transmitted equally in all directions. Expedient antennas increase the operating range of a given radio set. Provide increased efficiency through the use of an antenna specifically designed for the operating frequency in use, elevation of the antenna above ground, or by concentrating the signal along a given direction.

7-5. Antenna Length. In order to achieve the most efficient expedient antenna, it is necessary to know the wavelength of the frequency being used. The physical length in feet of an antenna can be determined by using the constant numeral table for the appropriate antenna.

a. 224 for a 1/4 wavelength antenna.

b. 448 for a 1/2 wavelength antenna.

c. 896 for a full wavelength antenna. The length in feet of a 1/4 wavelength antenna can be figured as shown below:

$$\text{LENGTH (feet)} = \frac{224}{\text{Operating Frequency (MHz)}}$$

EXAMPLE: Operating Freq. 50.00 MHz Antenna 1/4 wave = 224, 50 = 4.48 Antenna length = 4 ft. 8 in.

Computation for 1/2 wavelength and full wavelength is computed the same but use 448 as a constant for 1/2 wave and 896 for the constant for a full wave antenna. 1/2 wavelength is the standard antenna, 1/4 wave or greater provides greater reliability. Full full wavelength provides the optimum antenna length for any given frequency.

7-6. Elevation of Expedient Antennas.

a. Suspended vertical antennas Figure 7-3. Vertical antenna increase radio set performance by virtue of antenna wavelength and height above ground. The most effective height for an antenna is equal to or greater than 1/2 wavelength of the operating frequency in use. Elevations above this height require ground plane elements.



Figure 7-3. Expedient Vertical Antenna.

8. Expedient vertical antenna (Figure 7-3). The plain expedient vertical antenna is easily constructed and will increase the range of a HF radio set since it is 1/2 wave antenna instead of the 1/4 wavelength antenna. Determine the antenna length by using the formula in paragraph 7-5 for a 1/2 wave antenna, cut the wire and strip 2 inches of insulation from one end. Attach this end to the long whip case and the other end to an insulator. Mount the antenna into a hole and ensure it does not touch any brackets (Figure 7-2). Ground the radio as shown in Figure 7-3 and adjust communications.

9. Expedient 3/2 type antenna (Jungle antenna). The expedient 3/2 type antenna was developed for use in the jungle and if used properly, will increase your ability to communicate. You can fabricate a complete expedient 3/2 antenna using MBI insulation wood and other readily available materials. Determine the 1/4 wavelength of your operating frequency and cut 3 segments of varying and 7 ground planes as in Figure 7-4(a). Cut 3 spacing wires (Figure 7-4(b)) the same length. Place the ends of the wires together to form a triangle and tie the ends with wire, tape or wax. Attach an insulator to each corner. Place a ground plane wire to each insulator. Strip the other ends of the ground plane wires together, attach them to an insulator (Figure 7-4(c)), and fix securely. Space about 3 inches of insulation from each wire and bend them together. Tie one end of the radiating element to the edge side of insulator C, and the other end to another insulator (Figure 7-4(d)). Cut strips MBI wire to wrap over the ground location of the antenna to the radio set. Attach the radiating element to one of these wires and then to the long whip case attached to the radio. Attach the other to the ground plane wires and to the radio set case (Figure 7-4). Mount the antenna to the receiver height and adjust communications.



Figure 7-4. Expedient 3/2-type antenna

10. Expedient directional antenna. The vertical half-rhombic (Figure 7-6), and the long wire antenna (Figure 7-6), are two expedient directional antennas. These antennas consist of a single wire, preferably, 2 or more wavelengths long, supported at a height of 3 to 7 meters (10 to 20) feet above ground. The antenna will, however, operate well as low as 1 meter above ground. The two ends of the antenna be connected to a resistor of 500 to 600 ohms. Your cone antenna can assist you in getting a resistor or you can fabricate one as in Figure 7-7. A good ground, such as a number of steel stakes driven slightly under the antenna or a counterpoise should be used to ensure that the earth does not affect work of the radio's output. The radiation pattern is directional towards the end with the resistor.

4. Vertical Half-Wave Antenna. To fabricate a vertical half-wave antenna, determine the antenna length, L based on 2.4500 MHz wavelength of your operating frequency. Attach a small piece of wire on the top to a wire and then to insulator. Attach one end of the antenna wire to the wire side of the insulator and run the antenna wire over insulator, attach the other end of the antenna wire to the insulator, then attach the antenna wire to insulator and terminate the wire at the state at the far end of the antenna. Another piece of wire (the counterpoise) is connected below the insulators A and B to shield the radio signal. Attach the antenna wire to the long whip base of the radio set and attach the counterpoise to the radio set case (ground). Turn on the radio set and attempt communications.

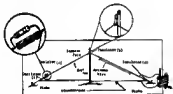


Figure 7-6. Vertical half-wave antenna.

5. Expedient Long Wire Antenna. The expedient long wire antenna is a directional antenna that can be easily fabricated out of readily available materials. A 500 to 700 ohm resistor should be used at the far end of the antenna, this can be achieved using your spare capacitor on case as in figure 7-7. To construct this antenna, cut the antenna wire 100-125 to a distance of 2 set up to 3 full wavelengths of your operating frequency. Attach one end of the wire to the long whip base of the radio set then run it over the insulator as shown in figure 7-7(b); run the wire over the support insulator 7-7(c) down to the resistor 7-7(d) to terminate the antenna wire at the ground state. Attach another wire to the opposite end of the antenna set run this wire back to the radio set and attach it to the radio set case (ground). Direction of transmission will be towards the end of the antenna with the resistor. Turn on radio and attempt communications.

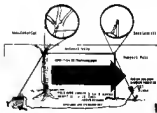


Figure 7-7. Expedient antenna

7-7. Flat to exponent resistors. Resistors are used in the construction of some antennas to make the antenna uni-directional (directional only). In many cases, it may be difficult to get a manufactured resistor. Listed below are some easy ways to fabricate a flat exponent resistor.

a. An old cylindrical type ear-plug case makes the easiest and most adequate resistor. To make a resistor, cut the case on the ear-plug case side to the center. Open the case and fill it with water from your lantern, pour 1 to 2 teaspoons of salt from your PMS chemistry pouch into the water and press the capacitor. Attach one end of the antenna wire to one side of the ear-plug case figure 7-7, attach the other side of your antenna wire to the opposite side of the ear-plug case and complete the circuit as in the instructions for the specific antenna.

b. Another flat exponent resistor can be made from the carbon case of a 33-00 battery. Cut the battery open and remove the case and use only the carbon case. Attach this resistor to your antenna the same way the ear-plug resistor is attached. Both these resistors provide approximately 500 to 1000 ohm resistance, which is sufficient for most low power military radio sets.

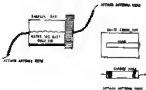


Figure 7-7. Exponent resistors. (500 to 1000 ohm resistance.)

7-8. CBI. The CBI (Cipher Breaking Instructions) should be utilized at all times. Proper use of the CBI can reduce transmission times, while reducing the enemy's capability of locating your unit using radio direction finding equipment. Unit CBI's usually include several alternate means of communication (i.e., oracles and moral systems, and emergency plans) to be utilized. Never use plain messages with code messages. Plainly codes are provided for more commonly used phrases. All messages should be authenticated to prevent the enemy from using interceptive facilities.

- a. Encoding using the KTC-400E Key Disk Code.
 - (1) Write out the plain text message, leave space above each line to write out coded letters.
 - (2) Turn to the code set for the time period (periods start with the last day of the month and each period is 48 hours long).
 - (3) Find the code word or number to be used and write the 3 letter code group over the message.
- b. Encoding using the KTC-400E Tee Disk Code.
 - (1) Write down the plain message.
 - (2) Turn to the code set for the time period being used.
 - (3) Find the 3 letter code and the word or phrase or number to use.
 - (4) Write the solution above the plain message.

c. Authentication using the KTC-400B Authentication Tables.

- (1) Randomly select 2 letters for the set indicator (SI).
- (2) Find the first SI in the first column.
- (3) Read to the right of that letter to find the second SI letter.
- (4) The letter directly under the second SI is the proper response.

7-9. Maintenance. Conduct a general check before the mission. Replace any wiring or broken equipment.

- a. Ensure that all component parts are present.
- b. Install battery and insert fuses.
- c. Tighten all screws.
- d. Reattach the handset, use the plastic tag off the radio battery and tape it securely.
- e. DO NOT reinsert the main ant. it is already waterproof in its tank.
- f. Test down all equipment in accordance with unit SOP.
- g. Clean out any audio connectors on PTTs and handset, battery terminal, and antenna connector.

7-10. Basic operation troubleshooting for military type radios.

Malfunction

Probable Cause

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Pushing noise is not heard when function switch is set to on, volume set to maximum or higher. | <ol style="list-style-type: none">a. CONER connector is not connected.b. Defective battery.c. Dirty or corroded audio contacts.d. Defective headset. |
|---|---|

Corrective Action

- a. Tighten CONER connector.
- b. Perform the following:
 - (1) Set function switch to LITE, the low lamp should light.
 - (2) Say the radio and talk, you should hear yourself.
 - (3) If neither 1 or 2 above work, replace the battery.
- c. Clean audio contacts (use touch pencil).
- d. Replace headset.

Malfunction

Probable Cause

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Communication cannot be conducted with distant station on assigned freq., noise tone is heard on transmission. | <ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Defective radio.b. Radio is locked in a poor position.c. The distance is too great to the next unit set. |
|---|---|

Corrective Action

- a. Perform the following:
 - (1) Rotate the MC and CC dials back and forth, also change the band switch a few times.
 - (2) Try alternate frequencies.
- b. Rotate radio.
- c. Retract the long whip.
- d. Construct a field expedient antenna.

SYMPTOM

3. Receiving is intermittent and whistling or sparking noise heard when transmitting.

CORRECTIVE ACTION

- a. Clean contacts w/brush.
- b. Replace O ring on handset.
- c. Replace handset.

PROBABLE CAUSE

- a. Dirty audio connectors
- b. O ring missing from handset.
- c. Defective handset or handset cable.

SYMPTOM

4. Communications cannot be conducted with a distant radio but can communicate with a close radio (1/4 mile or less).

CORRECTIVE ACTION

- a. Replace antenna.
- b. Clean contacts with a pencil eraser.
- c. Reconnect radio set to few feet away help.
- d. Change battery.

PROBABLE CAUSE

- a. Defective antenna.
- b. Dirty audio contacts.
- c. Radio in a gear location
- d. Weak battery.

SYMPTOM

5. Reception good, but not-seeing load burning noise when transmitting.

CORRECTIVE ACTION

Replace battery.

PROBABLE CAUSE

Defective battery.

CHAPTER EIGHT

AIR AVIATION

8-1. Army aviation and infantry units can be fully integrated with other members of the combined force team in both potential and tangible air assault tasks because that can project combat power throughout the entire depth, width, and breadth of the enemy battlefield with little regard for terrain barriers. Air assault operations are those in which assault forces using the firepower, mobility and total integration of helicopter assets, maneuver up the battlefield after the control of the ground or air maneuver commander to engage and destroy enemy forces or to seize and hold key terrain. These operations are deliberate, precisely planned, and vigorously executed combat operations assigned in advance and executed when and where to be most vulnerable.

8-2. Attack Helicopters. Attack helicopter battalions are normally placed OPCON to a maneuver brigade. Attack helicopters are not suited for missions requiring occupation of terrain not against heavily fortified positions without sufficient ground elements to drive the enemy from their positions. Employment of attack helicopters in fire support or combat support roles is discouraged.

8-3. Air Assault:

a. Successful air assault operations is based a careful analysis of METT-3 and detailed, precise reverse planning. Reverse planning that specifies the reverse planning sequence are developed for each air assault operation. They are:

- (1) The ground tactical plan.
- (2) The landing plan.
- (3) The air movement plan.
- (4) The loading plan.
- (5) The staging plan.

9. The above stated plans are carefully coordinated and developed by the air assault task force (ATF) to assure best use of available time. If time is limited, planning steps may be compressed or confused unnecessarily. Detailed written plans and orders may be supplemented by standard operating procedures or lessons learned in previous flights. Previous history and the development of SOP's cannot be overemphasized. The situation in the event must be considered. The situation in the event must have sufficient personnel to plan, coordinate, and control an air assault operation. When company size or larger operations are conducted, the bulk of the planning takes place at battalion or higher headquarters.

10. Ground Tactical Plan. The foundation of a successful air assault operation is the commander's ground tactical plan. All additional plans must support this plan. The plan specifies actions in the objective area to ultimately accomplish the mission and address subsequent operations.

11. The Landing Area. The landing plan must support the ground tactical plan. This plan sequences elements into the area of operations, ensuring that units arrive at designated locations and times needed to execute the ground tactical plan.

12. The Air Movement Plan. The air movement plan is based on the ground tactical and landing plans. It specifies the schedule and provides instructions for air movement of troops, equipment, and supplies from the LZ to the objective.

13. The Landing Plan. The landing plan is based on the air movement plan. It ensures that troops, equipment, and supplies are loaded on the correct aircraft. Unit integrity is maintained when aircraft loads are planned. Communications are necessary in order to ensure survivability of personnel and control assets, and the air of weapons pending at LZ ready to fight. The plan/operation must ensure that the aircraft is loaded so that dismounting soldiers effect smoothly and contribute to mission accomplishment.

14. The Staging Plan. The staging plan is based on the landing plan and prepositions the arrival time of ground units (troops, equipment and supplies) at the LZ in the proper order of movement.

h. Final Criteria.

15. Size. All air assault operations depend on type and number of aircraft, and are based on minimum acceptable distances between aircraft. Each aircraft should be provided a circular landing point separated from other aircraft and free of obstacles. Minimum acceptable landing point sizes (diameter of circle in meters) are:
- (a) Observation Helicopters-25 meters.
 - (b) UH-1, AH-1-35 meters.
 - (c) UH-60, AH-64-50 meters.
 - (d) Cargo Helicopters-80 meters.

16. Surface Conditions. Surface conditions in the LZ and LZ should not prevent the touchdown point or create hazards to landing (e.g., sand, blowing dust, snow). The surface of the zone should be free of obstacles that could damage landing aircraft (no tree stumps, large rocks). It must be firm enough to support the landing. Drainage should be adequate for rainfall runoff. If the surface is contaminated (chemical or biological) to an unacceptable degree, it may preclude use of the area. If part of the area is unsatisfactory for any reason, that part is not used.

17. Ground Slope - Landing. As a guide, if the ground slope is 0 to 5 percent, land operations in the zone is 7 to 10 percent, land operations, over 10 percent, no touchdown landcraft may have to drop off or pick up personnel and/or equipment.

18. Obstacles. For planning purposes, an obstacle clearance ratio of 10 to 1 is used on the approach and departure ends of the LZ and AT. That is, a landing point requires 100 feet of horizontal clearance if a helicopter must approach or depart directly over a 10-foot tall tree (Figure 8-1). A lesser ratio may be used in the helicopter approach or departure or departure is necessary situations or with light loads.

All obstacles within the PI and LI are marked with red lights or night lights as only when PI or LI is in use, or set (visual) during the day. The markings are not used to truly advise the position to be seen by the crew.



Figure 8-1. Obstacle Clearance.

10) Approach/Departure. The terrain surrounding possible PI or LI is analyzed for the traffic patterns. In a restricted situation, tactically approaching the PI or LI over the base ground level should be avoided. Still, there are only so many ways to get into an area. Approaches should be free of obstacles, and landings should be made into the mat, ideally, between set markers and made along the long axis of the LI over the lowest obstacle, and into the mat.

11) Leds. When a aircraft is loaded to near maximum lift capacity, it requires larger distances of lift-off the lead lift control system or ascend vertically). The greater the load (mass or an ascent), the longer the PI and LI must be to accommodate a flight.

i. Selection and Marking of PI and LI s.

11) Small and landing should be proficient in selection and marking of PI and LI s.

12) Marking LI s and PI s.

1a) Day. A ground guide will mark the PI or LI for the lead aircraft by holding an A16 A17A over his head, by displaying a signal V8-17 panel (check night), or by other identification means.

1b) Night. The code letter Y (inverted Y) is used to mark the landing point of the lead aircraft at night. Channel light sticks or 'beeping' lights may be used to maintain light tracking (Figure 8-2).



Figure 8-2. Inverted Y.

When more than one aircraft will be landing in the same PI or LI, there will be an additional light for each aircraft. For observation, utility, and attack aircraft, each additional aircraft landing point will be marked with a single light placed at the point that each aircraft is to land. For cargo aircraft (C-47, C-51, C-54), each additional landing point will be marked with two lights. The two lights will be placed to extend apart and will be aligned in the aircraft direction of flight.

1c) Obstacles. These include any obstruction to flight which might interfere with aircraft operation on the ground (trees, clouds, signal set cannot be detected). During daylight, the obstacle is responsible for marking obstacles on the ground. For night and limited visibility operations, all obstacles will be marked with red lights. The following criteria will used in marking obstacles:

11) If the obstacle is on the aircraft approach route, and the crew set for side of the obstacle will be marked.

(2) If the obstacle is on the aircraft's approach route, the near side of the obstacle will be marked.

(3) If the obstacle protrudes into the EE or LE, but is not on the flight route of the aircraft, the near side of the obstacle will be marked.

(4) Large obstacles on the approach route will be marked by signaling the obstacle with red lights.

(5) Control of aircraft, approaching aircraft are controlled by the use of approach and signals to maintain lateral guidance for landing. The signalman is positioned in the right front of the aircraft where he can best be seen by the pilot. Signals at night are given by using lighted wands or flashlight in each hand. When using flashlight, care will be taken to avoid blinding the pilot. Wands and flashlights will remain lighted at all times when signaling. The speed of any movement indicates the lateral speed of aircraft clearance with the signal.

(6) Air Signal Operations. Signals according to conditions may use any of the following AEA configurations which will be governed by the Air Signal Team Force (ASTF) Commander working in conjunction with the Air Signal Commander (ASC).

(i) Heavy Left or Right. Requires a relatively long, wide landing area; provides difficulty in coordinating landing; restricts suppressive fire by reduced clearance; provides firepower to front and rear (Figure B-3).



Figure B-3. Heavy Left/Heavy Right.

(2) Staggered. Allows rapid deployment for all-around security; requires relatively small landing area; provides some difficulty in coordinating landing; restricts suppressive fire of forward gunners (Figure B-4).



Figure B-4. Staggered.

(3) Vee. Requires a relatively small landing area; allows rapid deployment of forces to the front; restricts suppressive fire of forward gunners; provides some difficulty in coordinating landing (Figure B-5).



Figure B-5. Vee.

(a) **Division Left or Right.** Requires a relatively long, wide landing area; presents some difficulty in prearranging loads; allows rapid deployment of forces to the right; allows unrestricted suppressive fire by gunners (Figure 8-4).



Figure 8-4. Division Left/Division Right

(b) **Trail.** Requires a relatively small landing area; allows rapid deployment of forces to and from amphibious prearranging loads; allows unrestricted suppressive fire by gunners (Figure 8-7).



Figure 8-7. Trail

(a) **Staggered Trail Left or Right.** Requires a relatively long, wide landing area; facilitates prearranging loads; allows rapid deployment for all round security; gunners' suppressive fire restricted somewhat (Figure 8-8).



Figure 8-8. Staggered Trail Left/Staggered Trail Right

3. **PI Operations.** Prior to arrival of the aircraft, the PI must be secured, PI control party qualified and the process and equipment positions in staggered/quad assembly area.

(i) **Occupation of staggered/quad assembly area.** Platoon leader/quad leader should accomplish the following:

- (a) Maintain all-around security of the assembly area.
- (b) Maintain communications.
- (c) Organize weapons and equipment into chains and loads.
- (d) Conduct safety briefing and equipment check of loads.
- (e) Establish priority of loading for each man.
- (f) Brief on the location of staggered control points.

12) Movement to any subsector of Chalk Assembly Area: Linkup guides from the PI control party will meet with designated squads in the platoon assembly area and coordinate movement of squads to a release point. As squads arrive at the release point, squad guides will move each squad to its assigned chalk assembly area. To reduce the number of personnel required, the same guide may be used to move the squad from the platoon assembly area to the chalk assembly area. If part of a larger unit assault, no more than three squads should be located in the chalk assembly area at any time. Helos and light dismounts will be maintained throughout the entire movement to prior to maintain the security of the PI. Additionally, no personnel should be allowed on the PI until loading aircraft, rigging vehicles for airlift, or directed to PI control. While positioning in chalk order, each Ranger to assign a security firing position by the squad leader and position in the same position, weapon at the ready, and facing out away from PI to provide perimeter security. An example of a large, organized PI is depicted in Figure B-9.

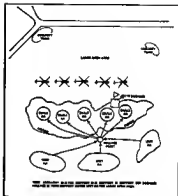


Figure B-9. Large, organized PI

An example of a small, organized PI with unit and platoon assembly areas is depicted in Figure B-10.

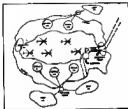


Figure 8-10. Split-chalk PT.

(1) While in the chait assembly area, units should adhere to the following principles for loading the aircraft:

(1) Maintain tactical integrity by keeping fire teams and squads intact.

(2) Maintain self-sufficiency by loading a squad and its ammunition on the same aircraft transport.

(3) Ensure key men, weapons, and equipment are accountability, being placed to prevent the loss of control, or all of a particular asset, if an aircraft is lost.

(4) Prior to loading, ensure all troop gear is laid down and checked short references placed on radios, folded down, and secured.

(5) Squad and team leaders check the assignment of their men to ensure it is complete and operational.

(6) Radio on and communications check performed unless directed otherwise.

(7) Specific aircraft seats are assigned to each man.

(8) PT Closure. During planned air assault operations the platoon sergeant is responsible for ensuring all personnel and equipment are loaded (unless the PT and security is maintained).

(1) Single Lift. The platoon sergeant positions himself at the last aircraft and collects "loose" men, if required. He will be the last man to load the aircraft. Once on the aircraft, the platoon sergeant will notify the crew chief and/or AMC using the troop commander's radio handset that all personnel and equipment are loaded. Closure security will be provided by the aircraft door gunners.

(2) Multiple Lift. The duties of the platoon sergeant are the same as for a single lift. During a multiple lift, the security teams will maintain security at the PT and be the last element to depart with the platoon sergeant. Depending on the tactical situation, if the assault teams, capabilities, size, or the PT may be necessary, however possible, the aircraft will land as close to the assault team positions as possible to enhance security and minimize the movement required by the team.

(3) Un-aid Loading Sequence. (Figure 8-11).

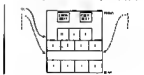


Figure 8-11. Un-aid Loading Diagram - Split Chalk

- (1) Chalk leader (chalk leader) initiates movement once the aircraft has landed.
- (2) The PAROLE and rearward groups move to the aircraft in line with the chalk leader (CL) always leading the rearward group.
- (3) Chalk leader shouts:
- (a) Ensure all personnel know which aircraft and which position to load.
 - (b) Ensure all personnel see or carry fullloads of the aircraft.
 - (c) Notify the crew chief when all chgls members are on board and are ready for liftoff.
 - (d) All personnel will buckle up as soon as they are seated in their assigned seats. The chalk leader will always sit in the left front seat unless a junior leader or senior member is on the same aircraft.
 - (e) The chalk leader will hand the chalk board to the pilot and answer any questions the pilot may have utilizing the aircraft intercommunication (crew) system as needed.

(4) UH-60 Loading Sequence (Figure 8-12).

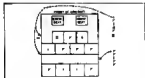


Figure 8-12 UH-60 Loading Diagram, White Chalk

(1) The chalk leader (chalk leader) initiates movement once the aircraft has landed.

(2) The PAROLE and rearward groups move to the aircraft in line with the CL always leading the lead to the appropriate side (Figure 8-13).

(3) The PAROLE group will always move around to the front of the aircraft.

(4) The chalk leader will stop at the rearward of the aircraft to ensure the rearward group loads properly then he moves around the front of the aircraft to the PAROLE and checks the other half of the chalk.

(5) All personnel will buckle up as soon as they are seated in the correct seat.

(6) The chalk leader will hand the chalk board to the pilot and answer any questions the pilot may have utilizing the aircraft intercommunication (crew) system as needed.

(7) Landing Zone Operations. Just as there is a priority of work for departure operations, there is a priority of actions when landing in an LZ.

(8) Unloading. UNLOADING at the aircraft does not begin until directed by the pilot or crew chief (Figure 8-13).

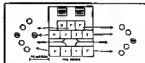


Figure 8-13. UH-60 Unloading Diagram

12) Once the aircraft has landed, personnel will urduvete bestdvete and vld vctvctv as best as possible vld vld vld.

13) Prior to leaving the aircraft, the chail leader will order the landing director from the side to be dismissed during the approach of the L2. This will aid in orientation of the L2, particularly at night.

14) Individuals will move to 20 meters out from the side of the aircraft and occupy the given position during any drop the aircraft, because of the nearby, until the aircraft has departed the L2.

15) Immediate Action on the L2. If the decision is made to use a hot L2, or omitted is made upon landing, troops usually dismount and move to 20 meters away from the aircraft and immediately return the crew time to allow the aircraft to depart.

16) If the contact is similar to a hot approach, troops will fire and services off the L2 to the side of the aircraft offering cover and concealment.

17) If troops are engaged from nearby enemy positions, they should do as a team enough by immediately following fire. Troops who consider themselves in the kill zone may assault the enemy positions on attempt to get out of the kill zone. Troops not in the kill zone will provide supporting fire to support the egress of troops in the kill zone.

18) The crew on ground leader will call for fire support if it is available.

19) Once disengaged from the enemy forces, the crew of ground leader will have the unit to a covered and concealed position, account for personnel and equipment, get the crew the situation as to whether or not the unit can continue the mission.

20) Cold Assembly on Cold L2. Upon receiving loss of aircraft, the cold leader (ground leader) will have the crew do the predetermined landing using traveling overwatch movement techniques. All troops will have a designated drop point or the nearest concealed position. Once at the concealed assembly point, the cold leader will make a quick count of personnel and equipment and then proceed with the mission.

21) Evacuation of Key Personnel. To ensure that an evacuation is conducted in an efficient and organized manner, key personnel will be assigned to perform specific duties. This section will address the duties and responsibilities of unit leaders during air assault operations and discuss the duties and responsibilities of key personnel in the air assault party.

Platoon Leader

Has overall responsibility for the air assault operation. May act as the DCCO. Plans the operation. Briefs subordinate leaders. Issues SOPs. Conducts rehearsals.

Works in the air assault commander's aircraft to ensure proper command, control, and communication between platoon.

Platoon Sergeant

Acts as the DCCO.

Supervises the landing of the L2. Supervises the steering of obstacles from the L2.

Briefs all platoon leaders.

Supervises all activities on the L2, PL security.

Movement of troops and equipment. Placement of chaffs and stragglers. Services and disassembles the jump sign. Works in the lead aircraft for control purposes and will ensure that the PL is placed.

Fig Helicopter Characteristics (Figure 8-14)

	UH-1	UH-1A	UH-1C	UH-1D	UH-1H
Max Gross Weight (lb)	10,000	17,400	15,000	20,200	26,000
Cruses air speed (knots)	90	111	90	145	155
Flight Time	2+30	1+40	2+15	2+15	2+30
Drop Rate (ft/s)	-	7	13	20	
Cost (ACU) (lb)	3,400	1895	4548	6195	27,500
Weapons					
T-128 (lb)	2	2	2		
20mm (lb)	975				
30mm (lb)	1200				
2.75" (lb)	75	75			
TCU	0				
HELICOPTER	10				
STINGER	10				
Dimensions					
L (rotor with load)	33' 1"	37' 1"	33' 10"	44' 10"	49'
H (rotor diameter)	44'	48'	44'	53' 0"	60'
H (fuselage diameter)	13' 9"	13' 8"	13' 8"	17' 8"	18' 0"

Figure 8-14. Helicopter Characteristics.

AIRBORNE RESUPPLY OPERATIONS

A. Drop Zone (DZ) Selection

1. A DZ is a designated area where troops and/or equipment are to be delivered by means of parachute or free fall. The ground unit commander selects the general area of the DZ where it will meet the tactical plan.

2. The following factors should be considered in the selection of a drop zone:

- A. Type aircraft involved
- B. Altitude of delivery
- C. Type of load (size or personnel)
- D. Obstacles
- E. Adversity approach and egress route
- F. Method of drop (high velocity, low velocity, free drop)
- G. Access to area

3. (DZ) The size required for a DZ is dependent on the type of aircraft and the load being delivered. To guide, the ground space required for one personnel, is 30m x 30m (Army aircraft) / 70m x 70m (Air Force aircraft). The length of the drop zone is dependent on the ground speed of the aircraft, and the time needed to release its load.

B. Drop Zone Calculations

1. The following formula are necessary for determining the required length of a Drop Zone, and the amount of DZs:

A. The formula used to compute the required length of Drop Zone, in meters, is $D = \frac{V}{S}$.

1. D = Length of the Drop Zone, in meters.

2. V = Speed of the aircraft (miles per hour).

By a constant of .30 converts to meters per second.

3. T = Time required for the drop (number of seconds or the time since 1 or number of loadies per each since 1 times 3).

EXAMPLE

AIRCRAFT SPEED PARACHUTISTS
 C-130 120 knots 64 132 gpm
 speed

STEP 1. 120 air speed
 r. 51 constant
 63.75 ft/sec

STEP 2. 63.75 ft/sec
 alt. number of jumpers times 1,474.30a = Length
 of line time needed to
 time 32 parachutists time a C-130 flying at
 a speed of 120 knots.

(NOTE) Always round the final answer up to the next higher whole number, 1477 meters. The personal drop, a 100 meter safety factor is added to each end of the computed ground distance figures for a total of 200 meters. Therefore, use the above figures in the examples
 $D = 1,477 + 200 = 2,177$ meters.

B. The formula used to compute amount of drift is
 $D = KW$.

1. D = The drift of the parachute in meters (see a given altitude).

2. K = The constant that represents the characteristic drift of a parachute; 2.0 for cargo parachutes and 4.1 for personnel parachutes.

3. W = altitude (expressed in hundreds of feet).

4. V = velocity in knots or the surface wind.

5. Forward time must also be calculated when using the $D = KW$ formula. Forward time is the lateral distance covered by the jumper or bundle from the time he or it leaves the aircraft until the time the parachute is fully deployed. Forward time for Army aircraft is calculated by taking 1/2 the speed of the aircraft. To approximate forward time add on the back estimate of the drop heading half the speed of the aircraft in meters (figure 8-15).



Figure 8-15. $D = KW$

Aircraft C-130 is at an altitude of 500 feet, speed 70 knots. Airdrop is released using a B-10 parachute. Ground speed is 5 knots $D = 2.0$ (constant) W altitude in hundreds of feet = 5 (altitude) $D = 62.5$ would be 2 meters in windward direction from the released target point, drop into the wind 63 meters. Then give a lead amount of the drop heading 1/2 of airspeed 170 $D = 361$. This is the release point.

C. Marking of the Drop Line, 111 U.S. Air Force Aircraft - Ground marker release system (GPRS).

(a) Various visual ground markings are used by the Air Force GDT to identify both the DF (the release point) for an airdrop. Normally, the Air Force GDT marks only the point of impact on the ground using a code letter, and Air Force crew members interpret the GPRS, as given to exit the parachute. This does not take place during GPRS operations.

(b) When using the GPRS, DIME always use the inverted L to designate the exact release point on the ground to the airdrop and jumpmaster. The inverted L does not identify the point of impact as does the GPRS system, not identify to the airdrop and jumpmaster the exact point over which the parachute will be prior to hit a point on the ground selected by the DIME.

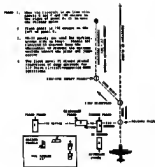
Let marking the DI. From the desired release point indicated by the airframe engineer, move into the wind the number of meters calculated using the $D = RMV$ formula. Then, let down or a back amount of 1/20 DWT heading the number of meters calculated on the forward throw. This is the 1st release point see figures 4-11 and 4-12.

13) Computing the release point, and the subsequent placement of the inverted U, is the key to a successful airdrop operation using DHO. The release point is the exact point on the DI over which exit from the aircraft is made. The release point is computed with three factors, dispersion, wind drift, and forward throw.

1st Dispersion. This is the length of the pattern caused by the impact of the parachutes. The desired point of impact for the first parachute depends on how the articulated aircraft carrier is tilted into the available DI area. Use the following formula, $D = RA$.

DI used with \pm toward throw. DHOs compute the wind drift using the $D = RMV$ formula. This method does not incorporate altitude error; however, it requires the least adjustment. Also, when using this formula, the DHO uses the forward throw. The effect that inertia has on a falling object. When an object leaves the aircraft, it is traveling at the speed indicated to the speed of the aircraft. The parachutes or bundles continue to move in the direction of flight momentarily until the dynamics of parachuting take effect and also lateral movement across the DI. The attached equations used to indicate forward throw drop for three aircraft follows:

	D-111	C-130
Forward	230 meters	320 meters
HE	170 meters	410 meters
CDT	780 meters	440 meters



10) Positioning of Heatings 1. Heatings must be placed so they are visible only from the direction of aircraft approach.

2. Panels should be positioned at a 45 degree angle to present the maximum surface toward the approaching aircraft.

3. Panels may not be placed where obstacles will meet the glide line of sight. As a guide, a safe clearance of 100 ft is best (Figure B-18). If the obstacle is behind the 100 ft line, the code letter is placed on the far end of the drop zone on true heading and on line with the release point.

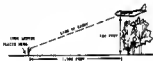


Figure B-18.

12) Army Aircraft

(a) Day

1) When marking a drop zone for Army aircraft there are four letters that can be used as the code letters. These letters form the word H, E, A, T. The letter used is determined by its unit SOP or by the Airborne Commander.

2) M9-170 panels are used to form the code letters. These panels have red, white, orange and white lettering elements. The white side is used for marking the code letter, the red panel and the orange side is used to mark obstacles in the base zone that are too large to remove. All code letters will be two panels high and one panel wide.

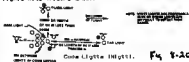
3) All code letters have a base panel. The top of the base panel is placed at the release point (Figure B-19). The first panel is positioned parallel to the code letter with the top of the first panel aligned with the top of the base panel. The first panel is placed 200 meters from the left edge of the base panel or at the edge of the drop zone, whichever is less. The top panel is positioned a distance of 500 meters from the base panel or at the end of the drop zone, whichever is less. The top panel will be placed on the leading true heading with the top of the panel elevated 45 degrees and in line with the base panel.



Figure B-19. Code Letters (Day).

(b) Night

1) The procedure for marking a night drop zone is the same as a day drop zone, except illuminated lights are used (see example B-20 below). When forming the code letter with lights, all code letters use 3 lights high and 3 lights wide (Figure B-20).



Code Letters (Night).

(2) If there are any vertical obstacles on the drop zone that cannot be removed, then a single red light must be placed as high as possible on the obstacle. Large obstacles are marked on three sides with red lights.

COURTESY NAME

STREAM CROSSING AND WATERBORNE OPERATION

1-1. GENERAL. The availability of ready-made bridges in a unit is not only uncertain, but is highly unlikely. Therefore, it is necessary to be able to construct spanning stream crossings. The leader will need to know various techniques in order to make a successful stream crossing. The stream crossing team is designed and instructed to prepare roads and equipment, and to perform team maneuvers. This team should be highly proficient in the mechanics of a stream crossing. This proficiency is gained by repetitive maneuvers, close inspections, organization and good control.

1-2. Organization of River Crossing Team.

- a. Number 1 man: Lead safety officer and Iarite (if available).
- b. Number 2 man: Rope puller, he will water obstacle pulling 120-foot rope, line off rope on Iarite anchor point.
- c. Number 3 man: Reverse if required, he is the last man to reach water obstacle.
- d. Number 4 man: Bridge Team Commander (BTC).
- e. Number 5 and 6 men: Rope Tighteners.

1-3. One Hole Bridge Team Crossings:

- a. Special Equipment:
 - (1) Tall timbers for space of heavy equipment.
 - (2) Two obstacles for every 120 feet of rope.
 - (3) One 11-foot utility rope per stream.
 - (4) Two grapnels per stream.
 - (5) One water-proof bag per obstacle.
 - (6) Three B-T line crossers.
 - (7) Three direction work vests.
 - (8) Two 120-foot nylon ropes.

12) He designates the rear-side erector point, then the erector is part of the transport lightning system, and leaving all personnel in the same bridge. He ensures that the transport lightning lead is on the upstream side of the rope bridge. He ensures that all individuals are in waterborne position, tested into the same leading the transport with the safety line routed through the leading shoulder of the individual a UCP art system. He ensures that the erector is tested into the rope. He positions the line of traffic on the bridge. He is responsible for crossing with the Number 1 and 2 erector. He is generally next to the last man to cross the lower platform erector who is leaving the erector.

13) Number 3 and 4 are responsible for waterborne erectors with UCP and safety line. They are responsible for lightning the transport lightning lead. They are also responsible for testing the erectors of the Number 3 and 4 erector. Once on the bridge, they are responsible for pulling the last man Number 1 and 2 across.

14) The erectors of 1/2/3 are transported across by 4/2/3 erector. The erectors of 1/2/4 are tested into the rope by the erector through the top of the 1/2/3 and the 4/2/3 erector pull them across. The erectors of 1/2/4 are attached to the 4/2/3 erector and the 4/2/3 erector that they are pulling across the bridge.

15) Bridge Team Commander oversees the bridge team during its planning sessions and directs construction and deployment. The unit leader selects the erector with which should complement the tactical plan.

16) Number 3 erector positions itself downstream of crossing site. 17) Number 1 erector water system of number 2. He stays on the left bank the number 3 erector and is prepared to render any assistance to the number 2 erector. Unit leader is responsible to coordinate for the erector. UCP leads edge out of reach position on the downstream side of rear-side erector point.

18) Number 4 erector Team Commander (TC). 19) He is in the waterborne position with UCP and safety line in safety line around the rear erector and all line erectors at same length. He is responsible for construction of rope bridge and organization of delta team. He is also responsible for deployment, the rope and tying and all line erectors.

(2) HRC 77 is still in waterlogged prior to connecting a new rope bridge assembly. A signal will be placed in the top center of the ruckpack frame using an 4x 1/2x3 post. The BTG will push the ruckpack to the 120 foot rope.

NOTE: The use of 2 guylinks inevitably leads to the lines hitching on the 120 foot rope. The end signals are adjusted all the way out with the cable is pulled across the rope hitching by the HTPLD.

h-4. PORTAGE STAFF. Normally a portage staff is constructed by using rivers and streams when the terrain is not water. A portage staff is especially useful when the unit is still dry and the platoon leader decides to keep the individual equipment dry.

h. Equipment Requirements:

- (1) Two sandbags per person.
- (2) Two weapons which can be used in 120 of ruckpack.
- (3) Two ruckpacks per team.
- (4) 10 feet of utility cord per team.
- (5) One nylon web per team.

h. Conditions: Heavy water will be used to cover water obstacles when any or all of the following conditions are found:

- (1) The water obstacle is too wide for a 20-foot rope to be used.
- (2) No suitable rope or log spans anchor points are available to make rope bridge construction.
- (3) Light or heavy resistance will prevent water to pass as it seems to allow a water obstacle if an unusual swift current is present.
- a. Obvious, a crossing site. Before a crossing site is to be used, a thorough reconnaissance of the immediate area must be made. Analyzing the situation using HTPLD's, the platoon leader chooses a crossing site that offers as much cover and concealment as possible and has obstacles and with signals that are as visible as possible. For speed of movement it is best to choose a crossing site that has near and far shore banks that are as easily traversed by an individual member.

h. Transition Phase: Steps for the construction of a portage staff:

(1) Four of the unit/platoon is order to have the necessary equipment.

- (2) The two 120 foot rope are placed and lay it out on the ground with the hook up.
- (3) Weapons are then placed in the center of the ruckpack, approximately 10 inches apart, inside to both.

(4) Next, ruckpacks and LEE are placed between the weapons with the top attachment points being ruckpacks 20 feet apart as possible.

(5) The two will then stand in water position to both, third with their backs, facing the lines, completely out for approximately 100 to 120 feet as necessary.

(6) The team will then placed over water/obstacle of water to be.

(7) They then continue to advance, facing each other really are going on top of their heads.

(8) Once all of the equipment is placed between the two weapons or posts, the ruckpack is moved together. The weapon portion of the ruckpack is then lifted into the air and quickly pulled back to the equipment. When on the surface and back to the end of the rope, crossing signals are used. Once it is accomplished each member of the two teams will be together. The signalers will then place in board the center top of the staff and tied off with a single postlock.

(9) The other ruckpack is then laid out on the ground with the hook up with the first ruckpack with equipment is placed in the center. The second ruckpack is then weapon, signal and tied in the same manner as the first ruckpack. The third and fourth ruckpacks are utility cord and then tied around the staff approximately one foot from each end for added security. The ruckpack will be on position.

NOTE: The unit leader must analyze the situation using METT-T and make a decision on the criteria for crossing the water obstacles, i.e., weapons loaded the possible raft or along across the back, remaining dressed or stripped down with clothes inside raft

4-3. FIELD EXPEDIENT EQUIPMENT. As these units are in operations, you may be called upon to cross an unfordable water obstacle without the proper equipment for construction of a drainage bridge. Some of the equipment you may use is listed as valuable assets:

a. Equipment your unit/position may be carrying which could be of use:

- 1) Comm. equip.
- 2) Rec. equip.
- 3) Patrol belts.
- 4) Canteens.
- 5) 55 gal. metal drums
- 6) Metal cans of food.
- 7) Metal cans.

b. Equipment items:

1) Comm. equip. can be putted across the obstacle by a strong swimmer and tied off with a wireline anchor point on the far shore with a ground line and two half-hitches. The gear can then be pulled tight and tied off to the same masses as the far shore. Care must be taken not to pull the wire too tight as extreme tension will cause it to break under a load.

2) Metal cans can be tied to the ends of a ground line and used as water stops.

3) Two empty metal cans tied to each end of a ground line will support a waterstop.

4) Two metal cans will support a waterstop.

5) Waterproof bags, tied at intervals at

ground line stops and the neck of the bag tied securely will support a waterstop.

6) An empty metal can with a stick or individual and six equipment safely across.

7) A pair of 20 lb. trousers tied out at each end of the ground line will support a waterstop and used as waterstops will hold the ground line.

c. Heavy equipment may be transported across by constructing a trailer with log poles and a chassis. The trailer is then supported by a ground line tied to each end.

SECTION II: UNFORDABLE OBSTACLES (GENERAL NOTE):

4-4. GENERAL: Use of signal and signal networks may add flexibility, accuracy, and speed in tactical operations. Use of these networks will also increase the load carrying capacity of normal standard units.

4-7. EQUIPMENT. 4870 General 20100 Asset

a. Description of asset, mechanical details and essential operations.

b. Information with float pumps using four separate valves located on the sides of the buoyancy tubes. Each of the four valves are used to section off the small boat into eight separate airtight compartments. To pump air into the boat, two air valves into the "forward" section of the valve. Once the small boat is filled with air, two air valves into the "aft" or "rearward" section. This will section the small boat into eight separate compartments.

a. Overall length - 15 feet, 3 inches.

b. Overall width - 3 feet, 3 inches.

c. Weight - 200 pounds.

d. Retrospect payload - 2,700.

e. Crew - 3 crewmen, 50 paddlers, can be powered by 40 HP - 65 HP short shaft outboard motor

9-8. ORGANIZATION,

a. Assign each individual a specific boat position (see figure 9-1).



Figure 9-1. Boat positions.

b. Designate a Coxswain for each boat (normally Captain).

c. Designate a navigator - observer team as necessary.

d. Crew is positioned as shown in figure 9-2.



Figure 9-2. Crew positions, long count and short count.

- a. Crew duties:
 - (1) Coxswain
 - (a) Responsible for control of the boat and actions of the crew.
 - (b) Approves the loading, lashing and distribution of equipment.
 - (c) Maintains the course and speed of the boat.
 - (d) Gives all commands.
 - (2) Number Two (admiral wing count) is responsible for setting the pace.
 - (3) Number one (admiral) is the observer and is responsible for the storage and use of the boaties, if an observer has been assigned.

9-9. PREPARATION OF PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT:

- a. All personnel will wear seatbelt or harness (see BATTLES POSITIONING positive distance device).
- b. LCE will be worn, unhooked at the waist.
- c. Individual water will be hung across the boat, inside plastic tank not facing toward the inside of the boat.
- d. Crew survival weapons, radios, ammunition and other utility equipment must be lashed securely to the boat to prevent loss if the boat should overturn. Machineguns with hot barrels must be cooled prior to being lashed inside the boat.
- e. Radio and batteries must be waterproofed.
- f. Portable electric light will be packed to prevent shorting the boat.

9-10. COMMAND: Coxswain will be issued by the observer to secure the boat and to commencing once boat not controlled in the water. All crew members will learn and be able to react immediately to all commands issued by the coxswain. The various commands/responses are as follows:

- a. "Long Count-----count off;" Crew counts off their position by number, i.e., 1,2,3,4,5 (passenger #1, #2, if applicable) coxswain.

b. "Long Count-----count off;" Crew counts off the position by number, i.e., 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10 (passenger #1, #2, if applicable) coxswain.

c. "Boat Stations", Crew takes positions along side the boat.

d. "High Carry-----Wave," Used for long distance wave overcast.

(1) On the preparatory command of "high carry," the crew faces the rear of the boat and squats down grasping carrying handles with the outboard mast.

(2) On the command "wave," the crew swings around, lifting the boat to the thwarts so that the crew is standing and facing to the front with the boat on their inboard shoulders.

(3) Coxswain gives the crew during overcast.

e. "Low Carry-----Wave," Used for short distance wave overcast.

(1) On preparatory command of "low carry," the crew faces the front of the boat, bent at the waist, and grasps the carrying handles with the outboard mast.

(2) On the command of "wave," the crew stands at attention raising the boat approximately six to eight inches off the ground.

(3) Coxswain gives the crew during overcast.

f. "Lower the Boat-----Wave," Crew lowers the boat gently to the ground using carrying handles.

g. "Give Way Together" crew juddies to front with number 2 setting the pace.

h. "Heel," Entire crew leans slightly straight forward sufficient to the water levelly strapping the boat.

i. "Heel Left (Right)," Left crew falls, right crew continues with previous command.

j. "Back Paddle," Entire crew juddies backwards, propelling the boat to the rear.

k. "Back Paddle Left" (Right) - Left crew falls juddies causing the boat to turn left, right crew continues with previous command.

1. 'Head paddles' Each man's glass paddles on these legs and blades outboard. This command may be given in gill. (e.g., 'Number 1 a, head paddles').

9-11. EMBARKING AND DEEMBARKING PROCEDURES:

a. When launching, the crew will maintain a firm grip on the boat until they are inside the bilgerig, when according to procedure, they will sit in the boat until it is completely out of the water. Launching and unloading is done using the bow as the entrance and exit point.

b. Keep a firm position of crew when entering and exiting the boat to avoid capsizing. Release 3 pieces of canvas as all times.

c. The long canoe is a method of loading and unloading by which the boat crew enters or exits individually over the bow of the boat. It is used as river canoe, on loading gear, and when deep water prohibits the use of the short boat method.

d. The short canoe is a method of loading or unloading by which the boat crew enters or exits in pairs over the side of boat while the boat is in the water. It is used in shallow water allowing the boat to be quickly berthed out of the water.

e. Landing the boat is a method of securing the entire crew of boat less shallow water allowing the boat to be quickly beached out of the water.

9-12. CAPSIZE: The following commands and procedures are used for capsize until an 18 signal or overboard boat.

a. 'Signals to regular' This command alerts the crew and they will be guided into their heads, with the blades raised forward.

b. 'Head paddles' All paddles are raised back and collected by the number nine and ten men.

c. 'Capsize the boat' All paddlers slide into the water except the number three, five, and seven men. They grab the canvas lines (assuming the lines are rooted under the safety lines) and wrap in the buoyancy tubes opposite the capsize legs (number eleven). The boat is then turned over by the three, five and seven men by leaning back and straightening the 4 legs as they pull back on the canvas lines. As the boat lifts off the water, the number four men grasp the center carrying handle and slide the boat over. Once the boat is over, the number four men bring the number three and seven men onto the boat at which time the number five men slide into the boat carrying handle and again, the boat is turned over the same way. The number five men slide the boat into the water and raise the rest of the crew into the boat.

d. 'Capsize a drift' As soon as the boat is capsized, the crewmen towards a long point to areas that are not in deep water are sent on gear. Every 1,000 lbs of gear is turned over, a long count must be conducted.

9-13. RIVER MOVEMENT:

a. Characteristics of River:

(1) Know local conditions prior to embarking on river movement.

(2) A bend in a river is the river channel.
(3) A bend is a straight portion of river between two bends.

(4) A straight is a bend and narrow area of river. They are normally wide areas and are distinguished from the bend over by their lack of gullies.

(5) Deep water is a part of the river, due to erosion and changes in the river course, that has no current. Deep water is characterized by extensive bends and turns.

(6) An island is usually a sand-merged bank of land in the main current of the river. Continuous passage of islands usually poses danger and should be avoided.

(7) The current is a narrow part of a bend in a normally greater than in the wide portion.

18) The current is gauged on the basis of a survey markers and station water are fixed on the bank of the river.

19) Passages are located at those points where a tributary meets into the main body of a river or stream.
20) The observer and the IC man must keep the observer, is designated catch the water for obstacles and overhanging vegetation and projections from the bank.

8. Navigation: The best observer is Passagable and Navigation. There are three acceptable methods of river navigation which may be used.

1) Obstacles and general route. These methods are used after the way side is marked by a well-defined channel and the waterway is not confused by many branches and tributaries. They are best used during daylight hours and for short distances.

2) Navigator-observer method. This method is the most accurate mode of river navigation and can be used effectively in all light conditions.

1) Equipment needed:

Compass

Maps and field notes

Tools and field kit

Passes and sign posts

Passes/Signals

Passes and sign posts

1) Navigator is positioned in center of boat and uses the compass. During hours of darkness, he uses the flashlight under the gun to check his map. The observer on the bank is in the hands of the boat.

1) The navigator keeps his eye and compass fixed on the stars.

1) The navigator keeps the observer informed of the configuration of the river by announcing banks, shoals, rapids and stream junctions as shown on his map.

1) The observer conveys this information with the banks, shoals, rapids and stream junctions he actually sees and also sends the confirmed the navigator updates his map & location on his map.

1) The navigator also keeps the observer informed of the general attitude of rapids as shown in his map and the observer confirms these with actual compass readings of the river.

1) The navigator announces only one configuration at a time to the observer and does not announce another until it is confirmed and completed.

1) A separate sheet or clear acetate drawn by hand on a map may be used. The drawing may be on scale or a sketch. It should show all curves and the shoals and depths of all passages. It may also show certain passages, stream junctions and shoals.

9-4. SECURING THE LANDING SITE:

a. If the landing site cannot be secured prior to the waterborne force landing, some form of early warning is essential to the success of the operation. These personnel will see into shore from the assault boats and signal the boats to land. All signals and stations used to recheck prior to the actual operation.

a. If the situation or necessary is going into an unsecured landing site the force provides security by having a security force land, reconnoiter the landing site and then signal to the remaining boats to land. This is the preferred technique.

a. The landing site can also be secured by force with all the assault boats landing simultaneously in a line formation. This plan is the least desirable method of securing a landing site, it should be reserved in the event the tactical situation requires the use.

9-15. POSITIONING: Various boat positioning can be used and they are: for control, speed and security. The choice of which to use depends on the tactical situation and the situation of the boat itself. He should use hand and arm signals to control his assault boats. The directions are:

- a. Stop.
- b. Line.
- c. Fire.

- 6. Schedule.
- 7. See Figure 9-3.



Figure 9-3. Positioning

9-16. SURF OPERATIONS

- 6. Launching:
 - (1) Use short steel cables of loading.
 - (2) Crew must keep their weight forward until beyond the snuff.
 - (3) The bow of the last mast is kept perpendicular to the waves.
 - 1. Launching:
 - (1) The stern of the last mast is kept perpendicular to the waves.
 - (2) Crew must keep their weight well to the rear after clearing the snuff.
 - (3) Seafire to get last seaward.
 - (4) Crew helps with the short snuff or beaching cables.
 - (5) Crew holds onto the boat until it is out of the water.
 - 2. Stop to start operations:
 - (1) This stop is done operation is one by which assault boats are launched from an LCH as a means of landing additional load a half of way to a beach.

- 62) Administrative Staff:
 - (a) Primary Control Officer (PCO).
 - (b) Secondary Control Officer (SCO).
 - (c) Safety Officer (SO).
 - (d) Landing Force Commander (LFC).
 - (e) Mission Controller (MC).
 - (f) Assault Boat Commander (ABC).
 - (g) Landing Craft Manager (LCM).
 - (h) Boat Coordination Line (BCL).
- (3) Characteristics, Duties and Responsibilities:
 - (a) Primary Control Officer (PCO):
 - 1. Overall in charge of operations.
 - 2. Working individual from the

- 3. is not a member of the LCH crew.
- 4. Stay with the last LCH.
- 5. Controls all LCH operations to include safety boat.

- 6. Release the release point and drop the "No Landing Then" series, once the SCO has advised that the "No Landing Then" series has been reached by the last LCH, the PCO will advise command, drop the NLT marker, and prepare to launch the assault boat.
- 7. Obtain surf/beach positions and be ready to recontact the Boat Safety Officer and Operations Staff prior to authorizing the LFC to launch boat.
- 8. Control launching of assault boat.
- 9. Maintain FM communications on the boat control net with the Operations Staff, Safety Boat, and SCO.

- (b) Secondary Control Officer (SCO):
 - 1. Provided by the Transportation Company.
 - 2. One of 25 or more.
 - 3. Not a member of LCH crew.
 - 4. Maintains FM communications with ABC, Operations Staff, and Safety Boat.
 - 5. Is present to advise duties of SCO.
 - 6. Controls all operations of LCH as which embarked as directed by PCO.

7. Keep LDM 400 awake to rear of lead LCH conducting maneuver operations until directed by the PCO to move to release point. Before the PCO sees his LDM has reached the "No Earlier Than" station. As this point the lead LCH will stop and prepare to launch assault boats. Other releasing assault boats upon PCO order, moves back 400 meters to rear of lead LDM.

(c) Safety team:

1. Provided by unit conducting operations.
2. Is the last boat loaded on the lead LCH.
3. Is the first boat off loaded at the boat release point.
4. Sections meet between the lead and trail LDM once off-loaded at the boat release point.
5. Rescues personnel in water, as directed by PCO.
6. Boats and units take where equipment is left.
7. Maintains FM communications with the COO, BCO, and Operations Staff.
8. Safety team kit will consist of the following:

- (a) One PPC FF, wireless (waterproof)
- (b) One hydroline.
- (c) One float and kit.
- (d) Three set of epi floats.
- (e) Five parachute illumination flares.
- (f) Five strobe lights.
- (g) One spotlight.
- (h) One earler wady with 40 feet of line.
- (i) One life ring and 40 feet of line.
- (j) Two patches side line.
- (k) One flag of call signs and discussions.
- (l) Two marker floats to use as "NET/ALT" marks.

(NOTE) Unit provides safety swimmer.

(d) Landing Force Commander:

1. Provided by unit conducting operations
 2. Co-located with PCO.
 3. Controls operations of all assault boats.
 4. Informs PCO when all assault boats are ready for launch.
 5. Directs MC to launch assault boats once authorized by PCO.
 6. Remains with LDM throughout operation.
 7. Maintains FM communications via TAC Net with each MC and with the Operations Staff.
- (e) Mission Commander:
1. Provided by unit conducting operations.
 2. Overall responsibility for the tactical status of his element.
 3. Maintains FM communications via TAC Net with the LFC and Operations Staff.
 4. Supervises the inspection conducted by assault boat Commander, for each member of the lance, weapons, equipment, weapons, life vests and rigging of assault boats prior to LDM debarkation.
 5. Given list of all personnel by assault boat number to the LFC prior to LDM debarkation.
- (f) Assistant Mission Commander:
1. Provided by unit conducting operation.
 2. Presence is assumed all times of MC.
 3. Maintains visual contact with MC during conduct of all boat operations.
 4. Occupies last assault boat off LDM.
 5. Monitors TAC Net and assumes MC mission if MC is unable to perform his mission.
- (g) Assault Boat Commander/Commander:
1. Boat leader/boatman leader.
 2. Controls all operations of his assault boat.
 3. Supervises and instructs each member of his assault boat for unit's, equipment, weapons and life vests, prior to debarkation of LDM.
 4. Insures all equipment is secured properly to the assault boat prior to debarkation at LDM.
 5. Informs MC when ready to launch from LDM.
 6. Launches in direction of MC.

1. Maintain visual/voice contact with PC.
2. Notify PC upon reaching PC.
3. In an emergency situation, directs assault teams required to relinquish control of his assault boat and save the life of any crew member who may be in jeopardy.

(1) Safety Officer (SO):

1. Provided by unit conducting operation.
2. Is a commissioned officer or PCO.
3. Coordinates with the Operations Staff/Navigation Team.

Navigation Team:

1. Makes the overall decision in matters concerning safety.

(2) Operations Staff/Navigation Team:

1. Provided by unit conducting operation.
2. Consists of the O-3, 2 Boat #1, and 2

RTSLO:

1. Maintains in communications with PCO, SO, Safety Boat

via Boat Control Net.

2. Provides an estimate of beach and surf conditions to the PCO via Boat Control Net.

SO, Safety Boat

3. Reports any unsafe conditions to the PCO via Control Net.

conditions to the PCO via Control Net.

4. Conducts assault.

Mark the beach landing site with appropriate markers.

5. Marks the beach landing site with appropriate markers.

(4) Concept of Operations. A coordination meeting involving all participating units will be conducted prior to the start of the assault operations. Attendance of the Landing Force Commander, Primary and Secondary Control Officers from the Transportation Company and the Operations Staff is mandatory. During this meeting aspects of the operation will be discussed and finalized. On the day of the operation, the O-3 will check with the O-2 to ensure the proper routes of beach, life vests and equipment have been traced. The assault teams will be briefed under the supervision of unit cadre. Placed teams will report to the Landing Force Commander when they are ready for landing on the LCMs. The Landing Force Commander will inform the Primary Control Officer, who will give the Landing

Force Commander permission to land files on the LCMs. The Primary Control Officer is ultimately in charge of all operations during LCM movement. Upon reaching the release point, the Landing Force Commander, with the Mission Commanders will report the assault teams are ready to launch. The Primary Control Officer will also receive a GO report from the Operations Staff, Safety Boat and Secondary Control Officers via the Control Net. Upon approval of a GO status from all three parties (Secondary Control Officer, Safety Boat and Operations Staff), the Primary Control Officer will then direct the Landing Force Commander to launch the assault boats. When the LCM ramp is lowered, the Mission Commander will direct the off-loading of all assault teams. Once all the teams are launched, the Primary Control Officer remains in control until the assault boats have passed the final Obstruction Line (POL). At this time, control is passed to the Landing Force Commander. The Mission Commander is responsible for the assault boats throughout the operation.

(2) LCM

(a) Major activities are required during the last of the LCM, a-teams decision will be taken to quit the ramp activity chains. Ramp retaining logs will be removed before any LCM operations commence. Retaining logs will be in the gap between the ramp and Cargo Deck.

(b) Any individual who falls off the ramp will immediately reach away from the edge and wait for a life slip to be thrown or an assault team to be launched. If the assault boat is already in the water, personnel will attempt to recover the assault boat, and the LCM. When approaching the LCM, either entering, landing or in a boat, avoid the rear of the LCM due to the crossier net structure.

(c) In an emergency situation, instructions will be provided by the LCM commander.

(3) Assault Boat Operations:

(a) Assault Boat Commander (ABC) must be familiar with crew drill. The ABC must be able to steer the assault boat. Nobody in the boat should say anything except the ABC.

Let the PCO in an emergency situation, direct immediate actions required to maintain control of his assault boat and to save the lives of any crew member overboard.

Let Assault Boat Instructions

1. No more than one boat at the bow of the assault boat should be on the edge of the LCU during launching. The assault boat must remain perpendicular to the ramp at all times. Loading must be accomplished using the long dunnie method, in an orderly manner and as quickly as possible. Again, all individuals must keep their feet and shift stay low to the deck and maintain three points of contact.

2. When jacking with the waves, the weight should be toward the stern when jacking against the waves. The weight should shift forward. The deck should always be perpendicular to the waves.

3. Deckhand instructs a crew or watches crew. Reels should be tended whenever possible. Reels are very sharp and could injure individuals, or puncture the boat causing leakage.

4. When it is noticed that a boat cannot be loaded, tend the assault boat on the stern, starboard, hold onto the boat and wait it across the ramp.

5. Mate all gear to buddy team with a lead and stowage between pairs together. Two lead anchors will not be used together for any reason. Neither will Radio Operators and non-armed weapon crews be packed together.

7) Dagnings

Let if the boat requires a lead about three front seat be secured immediately by all crew members. If conditions prevent the front line being unrigged, all personnel will hold onto the sides until the dunnie will be dished on both and signal for assistance. Followed a handcount. If anyone is missing, all personnel along the sides of the boat will attempt to deal with their feet and hands for trapped personnel underneath.

simultaneously. The individuals trapped will move hand-over-hand underneath the boat until free, immediately after being picked up or arriving on shore, another handcount and inventory of equipment will be made. Any shortages will be reported to the next higher commander immediately. In the event the boat is damaged near the shore and the crew is deemed to be in danger, an attempt to unrig the boat, instead have each man hold onto the boat and limit staff it to shore. The boat should be kept between the ramp and personnel as a "buffer".

Let if an assault boat requires time to an LCU, personnel will be instructed not to exit the LCU ramp. They will observe correct egress procedures of an individual exiting into the water since to the LCU, no tow will be attempted to stay away from the LCU ramp and wait for assistance.

Let if the boat requires gear to the MCL, the PCO will attempt to assist the crew with either the LCU or Safety Boat.

Let the PC will direct other assault boats to assist damaged areas if it is feasible and/or other boats that are in the proximity.

Let Once the assault boats have passed the PDL and due to circumstances, the PC is unable to provide assistance, crew members will hold onto the sides of the boat and ride the waves to the beach. The LFC will direct all emergency actions beyond the MCL.

Let Abort Procedures (Contingency and Emergency Signals)

Let A verbal GO from three sources (PCO, LFC's, and Operations staff) is required for approval to launch the assault boats from the LCU. Each PCO must have approval from the PCO.

Let PR communications between PCO and PCO, as well as between PCO and Operations staff on shore is required prior to approval to launch.

1c) Emergency signal to stop all action at night is a red star cluster; backup will be shown "blackout" of initial guide light. Illumination will be available or call when possible.

1d) Emergency signal to stop all action during day is red star cluster; backup with a red para).
17) Alert identifier

1a) If the safety boat operator cannot safely move from the launch into the open sea in the release point, he will notify the PCD and on order from the PCD, move to a designated alternate site.

1b) If the LCM runs, when lowered, leaves the water more than specified the PCD will be given a NO-GO for launching rescue boats from the LCM.

1c) Thunderstorms within five miles and moving towards launch site.

111) Rescue Boat Actions upon Alert:

1a) All operations will immediately STOP and rescue boats will cease to be off-loaded from the LCM.

1b) Boats enroute to the PCD, will return to the LCM.

1c) Boats beyond the PCD, will move to the beach (landing site, or upon verbal) toward from their PC or LFC and execute new instructions.

CONFIDENTIAL

MILITARY MOUNTAINWAR(AM)

10-1. WARFARE. The success of a unit operating in mountainous terrain depends on its ability to use a number of skills in overcoming a great variety of obstacles. These include map tying, constructing a line of defense, route evaluation, rappelling, and accurate climbing technique on rock, snow and ice.

10-2. SPECIAL EQUIPMENT:

a. Ropes

(1) Ropes are intended to provide security for climbing and equipment in operations involving steep slopes and descents. It is also used for stabilizing rope installations and hauling equipment.

(2) Selection. Nylon and ropes are usually used for military mountaineering (climbing/rappelling/ installation) vs. tarzanite.

(a) Should be selected/used based on mission and intended use.

(b) Impact force (the jerk on a climber caused by a fall) should be low.

(c) Stiffness (spring) should be considered (dynamic vs. static ropes for ascending and descending).

(d) Weight should be considered (rope length and diameter).

(e) Versatility and multi-use ropes should be selected.

(f) Know the tensile strengths and characteristics/compatibilities of the ropes you select.

(3) Care of Ropes

(a) Inspect ropes thoroughly before, during, and after use for cuts, excessive fraying, abrasions, mold, soil and wire spots.

(b) When wet, hang rope to drip dry on a rounded peg, at room temperature (do not apply heat).

(c) Do not step on rope or drag or ground unnecessarily.

(d) Avoid burning ropes over sharp or rough edges (pad if necessary).

1) Keep the rear way free all, sides, and other remaining substructure.

2) Avoid rinding rear together under barrier (i.e., nylon to nylon friction will harm the paper).

3) Do not leave ribs locked on tightly stretched longer than necessary.

4) Clear if real water, loosely roll and hang to dry last at least sunlight, ring ultraviolet light rays from the synthetic barrier. Store in a cool, dry, shaded area or page.

5. Nylon Netting:

1) Used for setting runners, rollers (shrouded and other general purpose rings. Use of tubular nylon webbing is advised 3/4 inch or 1 inch wide.

2) Care:

a) Cut with a hot knife to fuse the ends to prevent fraying.

b) Keep away from oil, water, and other corrosive substances.

c) Inspect before, during, and after use for tearing, cuts, and rips.

d) Store in real water, air dry, and store in a cool dry area out of direct sunlight.

6. Shackles

1) Shackles are used to attach a rinding ring to protection, securing rollers, and racking rope installations for the movement of men and equipment in emergency barrier.

2) Size characterization of shackles selected.

Steel, aluminum, phosphor-bronze, or steel lined oval, D-shaped, modified D-shape, open ring. Loading and connecting into shackles.

3) Check grip for safety and proper loading.

Check the shackle for denting and on loading condition.

4) Correctly position to prevent undesirable running of rope. Single vs. multiple shackle employment.

5) Inspect before, during, and after use for rips, tears, grooves, and defects. Remove all mud with steel wool. Use dry graphite on hinges and moving parts. Store in a dry area out of sun.

7. Slings

1) A rill placed given the attached a rill of several hundred pounds length to carry over 2,000 pounds length. Advantages over chain or wire slings provide for an unobstructed rail, are not subjected to rips and rope installations. Wire slings are not subjected by attaching runners facility rill or rill slings. Insert a special through the eye of the rill.

2) Types:

1) Vertical - for narrow vertical barrier.

2) Horizontal - for narrow horizontal barrier.

3) Angle - for rill drag rill.

4) Web - for rill rill rill.

5) Use: rill the rill or rill rill it is available. Select the appropriate rill with the rill it into the rill. Hammer the rill into the rill. Test by pulling up, down, rill rill and put with rill rill weight. Several rill can be rill or top of rill rill to fit the rill structure.

8. Wire Hammers

1) Use:

1) Driving and rill rill.

2) Tapping rock rill rill or rill rill.

3) Cleaning out rill rill rill and rill.

4) Chipping rock or rill.

5) Always wear hammer or rill with rill before starting the rill.

9. Chocks

1) Chocks are used to provide artificial protection when rilling, rilling, racking rope installations and rilling security. A rill placed rill if rill and rill to replace rill rill, and are used for rill rill.

2) Types:

1) Hexagonal - The rill is a variety of rill for a rill variety of rill to rill rill rill.

101 Blind stoppers - These are the smallest stops and are tapered at the ends to wedge into small cracks. Come in a variety of sizes.

102 Coated stops.

103 Half moon shaped, sized and tapered stops come in a variety of sizes and are well suited for seal in irregularly placed cracks.

104 Mechanical opening activated bonding devices can be applied easily with one hand, and are easy to remove.

105 Use. Check, by nature, provides protection for a single direction of pull. Sticking stops in connection give additional security when the load comes from that direction. Insert a stopper into the crack and make so that all load the stopper is wedged into the crack. Test by pulling the stop sideways and out with increasing weight. Release by pushing in and turning one to side or up and down. Well wedged stops may require tapping out with a pilot hammer.

10-3. KNOTS:

a. Splicing into line to tie ends of ropes together.

101 Square knot - Two interlocking loops, turning rope will on same side of standing portions of rope, 180 degrees away from each other. Each turning and half twisted to the side averages into with horizontal aspect to standing part of rope (Figure 10-1).



Figure 10-1. Square knot

102 Used to tie ropes of equal diameter together.

103 Always secured to its rope with half twists or overhand knots.

104 Double sheet bend - Two ropes securing a right hand in place by a locking eye. The two standing parts form an "L" and exit the end at a 90 degree angle from each other. Used to tie ropes of equal or unequal diameter together or to tie several ropes to one rope (Figure 10-2).



Figure 10-2. Double sheet bend

b. Anchor knots

101 Bowline - Round turn with a heaving line the preferred knot for anchoring systems. Right secured by line with half twist for overhand knot, 4 to a knot (all (Figure 10-3).



Figure 10-3. Bowline

NOTE: All lines must be completed with a half hitch or overhead knot (Maritime rope).

101 Round Turn with Two Half Hitches - Used to tie the end of a rope to an anchor, and it must have constant tension. Two wraps that do not cross, secured by two half hitches on the standing part of rope. More than one inch tail remaining. Used with tension applied at all times (Figure 10-4).



Figure 10-4. Round turn w/2 half-hitches

102 Clove Hitch - Two wraps around the anchor which do not cross secured by locking the facing 90 degrees in the direction of pull, with more than a 6 inch tail remaining. Running ends exit knot 180 degrees apart. Used as an anchor knot in the middle or at the end of the rope. This knot must have constant tension, once tied, to prevent slipping (Figure 10-5).



Figure 10-5. Clove hitch

c. Special Knots.

(1) Butterfly - Form a single fixed loop in the middle of a rope. The wings of the knot must be dressed down tightly and close together. The ropes between the wings must be parallel with no cross over. The loop should be large enough to accept a snapshank. All ropes in the knot must be tightly dressed (Figure 10-6).



Figure 10-6. Butterfly

(2) Mirman's Knot - Form a directional single fixed loop in the middle of a rope used in a transport tightening system. Four separate interlocking rights tacking down on themselves, with a fixed loop pulling from the top of the knot, and laying flat toward the rear side anchor point (Figure 10-7).



Figure 10-7. Mirman's Knot

(3) Bowline on a Sight - Form two fixed loops in the middle of a rope. The fixed loops that will not slip, do tacks in the knot, and a Bowline loop locked in place by a sight (Figure 10-8).



Figure 10-8. Bowline on a Sight

99) Frush (end of rope) - Used to put a movable knot on a fixed rope so that the knot will lock when or secure itself to the rope passing through the knot. Four wraps secured by locking bar. The knot is tight and dressed down with no ropes twisted or crossed. The knot is secured with a locking 4-6 inches from the frush (figure 10-9).



Figure 10-9. End of rope frush.

100) Frush (middle of rope) - Used to put a movable knot on a fixed rope. Four wraps secured by locking bar. The knot is tight and dressed down with no ropes twisted or crossed. The knot is secured with an overhead knot 4-6 inches from the frush (figure 10-10).



Figure 10-10. Middle of the rope frush

14) Three loop bowline - Used to form three fixed loops in the middle of a rope. Rope is doubled and starts in fore knot. Double bight, secured by double loop. No half hitch, three loops same diameter (Figure 10-11).



Figure 10-11. Three loop bowline

15) Bowline on a coil - used by climbers to partly climbing when harnesses are not available. Four 1/2 in. parallel straps around the body leave the hips and below the ribs. The top and bottom ropes cross forward of the hips. The loop may be under all arms. The parallel arms are visible through the belt. Half hitch on the top rope (Figure 10-12).

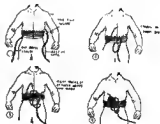


Figure 10-12. Bowline on a coil

11) Hunter hitch - Used for rigging or in a mechanical hoist. Loop left alongside a right bearing two parallel wires - English through rimless (Figure 10-13).

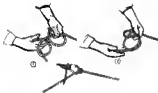


Figure 10-13. Hunter hitch.

d. Tightening systems:

13) Transport tightening system. Tie a fixed loop knot (wreath or knot) on the rear side, insert a sheath into the loop. Route the rope around the rear side anchor. Thread the rope running around the rear side anchor into the sheath. The sheath is not to lead far enough in front of the parallel anchor to allow for tightening of the rope, or the sheath is not to be pulled away from the rear side anchor by the far side team. Secure the far side anchor point with a round turn and two half hitches. The rear side pulling team pulls all slack out of the rope and ties off the rope behind the wreath or knot with two half hitches on a line.

14) Bruce tightening system. Same as transport tightening system except, tie a finger snook into the loop of the wreath or knot. Insert a sheath into the top right of the wreath or knot (not the loop). Route the rope running around the rear side anchor through the finger snook, and clip the rope into the sheath. Pull on the rope and slide the finger snook back as required. Tie off to an effect anchor point (Figure 10-14).



Figure 10-14. Bruce system.

10-4. MOUNTAIN WALKING TECHNIQUES:

a. Mountain walking is divided into four techniques depending upon the general direction of the terrain: walking on hard ground, grassy slopes, snow slopes, and steep slopes.

b. Steep Techniques. Applies to all mountain walking techniques:

- 1) Steps gathered over feet on all slopes.
- 2) Mountain as well as side-ground surface contact as possible.
- 3) Straighten the trail over steep feet after to read the leg muscle.
- 4) Keep a nice rhythmic gait maintaining good balance during trail steps.
- 5) Use all available hands and feet/legs.
- 6) Forward progression on the slope whenever could be first walking straight up the slope, to a stopping zone like loose pine soil, and then to a traverse into sag pattern on the steeper zone.
- 7) On steep or slippery slopes, climbers should use a rope party with to increase mutual safety.

c. Walking on hard ground. Hard ground is directly under feet but does not give way under the weight of the climber as steep.

1) Ascending

- 1a) Steep slopes are traversed rather than gained straight up.
- 1b) In traversing, the full body weight straight is accomplished by rolling the whole body over the hill on each step.
- 1c) For small ascenders, the stepping zone may be water-ascending straight up with the feet pointed out.

2) Descending

- 2a) The climber walks straight down the slope without descending.
- 2b) Keep the feet straight and the knees bent.

d. Snowy slopes. Snowy slopes are usually composed of small lumps of snow with thin ice continuous field.

1) Ascending. The upper side of each lump or snow is stepped on when its ground is snow level.

2) Descending. It is best to traverse because of the uneven nature of the ground.

3) Traversing. The uphill side points in the direction of travel. The downhill foot grabs about 45 degrees off the direction of travel.

e. Snow slopes. Snow slopes consist of small rocks and gravel that vary in size from grass or sand to that size of a fist. At any snow or a mixture of all sizes, but usually snow slopes consist of 100 mm size particles.

1) Ascending.

- 1a) Kicks in with the toe of the upper foot so that a step is formed in the snow.
- 1b) Weight is transferred from the lower to the upper foot, and the process is repeated.

2) Descending.

- 2a) Descend across slopes straight after using a short shuffling gait with the knees bent, back straight and feet pointed downhill.
- 2b) When several climbers descend a snow slope, together, they should be as close together as possible, one behind the other, to prevent injury from a dislodged rock.
- 2c) Avoid shuffling over a snow slope to avoid loss of control.
- 2d) Caution is used when the bottom of the route cannot be seen since drop-offs may be encountered.

f. Thin slopes. Thin slopes are caused by the accumulation of rock debris which are larger than a pea or fist. When ascending or descending, watch eyes on the top of and on the uphill side of the feet. Avoid dislodging rocks which may cause a avalanche. Climbers must stay in lines columns while descending.

g. Rocks in the road cause mountain climbing danger. The special walking techniques discussed above are designed to reduce the likelihood of rock-fall. Loose rocks, debris, or equipment falling, the "falling rock" or "equipment" is avoided. Descend down immediately down into the cliff to check their progress, and do not look up.

g. **Look Selection.**

(1) **Considerations.**

- (a) Tactical considerations.
- (b) Time element.
- (c) Skill, condition, and number of soldiers involved.
- (d) Equipment available.
- (e) Support required.
- (f) Effects of weather and difficulty of terrain.

(2) **Steps.**

- (a) Map and photo reconnaissance.
- (b) Aerial reconnaissance.
- (c) Ground reconnaissance.
 - (1) Approach, base route with alternate routes, identify primary and alternate routes for ascent and descent.
 - (2) Type of terrain, nature of difficulty.
 - (3) Relay and anchor positions.
 - (4) Obstacles.
 - (5) Special equipment needed.
 - (6) Changes from earlier changes.
 - (7) Tactical considerations (security through overcast positions).

- (a) Weight carried over the feet.
- (b) Feet and legs carry weight.
- (c) Hands mainly for balance.
- (d) As much hand grip as possible in contact with the wall.
- (e) Knees bent as low, between waist and shoulder height. This position gives the desired upright, balanced position and gives maximum rest for the arms.
- (f) Keep the body and feet away from rock to counter the gravitational pull on the legs.
- (g) Three points of contact with wall (i.e., 2 hands and 1 foot, or 2 feet and 1 hand).
- (h) Relaxed when climbing and deliberate when descending.

- (i) High route two or three moves ahead.
- (j) Use all available hand and footholds, avoid over stretching and the pulling in a spread eagle position.
- (k) In ascent,
 - (1) Face upwards = climbing easy to difficult.
 - (2) Face forward = climbing more difficult.

(3) **In descents:**

- (a) Face out = climbing very easy, not steep.
- (b) Feet sideways = climbing easy to difficult.
- (c) Face inward = climbing more difficult, very steep.

(4) **Types of holds.** Holds need not be large to be safe. Plan well, move in advance, standing exactly where the hands and feet are going to be placed. All test and foot holds are tested before use by gradually adding weight.

- (a) Footholds.
 - (1) Step
 - (2) Traction
 - (3) Jam
 - (4) Down pressure

10-B. **ANCHORS.**

a. **Natural anchors.**

- (1) Trees - sufficient size, well rooted.
- (2) Rock-nubbles, ledges, and shock-absorbed shaft for firwood, avoid sharp edges.

b. **Artificial anchors.**

- (1) Cables
- (2) Timber belay net
- (3) Three or four nylon anchor
- (4) Bolts with nuts
- (5) Nail driven through

10-C. **LOOK CLIMBING TECHNIQUES.**

- a. **Balance climbing.**
 - (1) Technique

- 10) Handholds.
 - 11) Pull
 - 12) Push
 - 13) Push
 - 14) Jee
 - 15) Briction
 - 16) Coese pressure (toward an outward pressure)
- 11) Position. Use combinations and variations of the previously mentioned hand and foot holds.
 - 11) Leg hold
 - 12) Chienay
 - 13) Coese pressure (toward an outward pressure)
 - 14) Inverted pull on gush (underclimb)
 - 15) Rerailing
 - 16) Change grip, transfer body weight only

when necessary using handhold.

- 12) Variations.
 - 11) Step. A smooth portion of rock, lying at an angle.

- 13) Full sole to surface contact to increase balance and friction of the foot.
 - 14) Use all irregularities to rock.
 - 15) Point (toe) feet downhill in ascending.
 - 16) Upper feet pointed in direction of movement.
 - 17) Stand erect, maintain balance and control.
 - 18) Keep moving in a rhythmic pace.
- 14) Crawl walk, leading away from the slope squalling over feet and hands when ascending, traversing, or descending slopes. The weight is evenly maintained over the hands and feet. This technique relies mainly on friction.
- 15) Shoulder stand.
 - 16) Lower ear well heaved.
 - 17) Lower ear stretched lapped in.
 - 18) Climber jugs the lower man's body as a ladder to traverse a difficult section.

- 16) Precautions.
 - 17) Margin of safety. May utilize individual abilities.
 - 18) Use rope party climb as the slope steepens and difficulty increases.
 - 19) Plan entire route - prevents getting "stuck."
 - 20) Avoid overreaching, i.e., "barned eagle" position.
 - 21) Avoid "bumping" the rock.
 - 22) Loose soil is loose before placing weight on it.
 - 23) Avoid using toes, shoes, and buttocks.
 - 24) Do not grab ledge rocks laterally. Vocal appeal "up" when gauging rock to fall. When in a over-extended situation,
 - 25) Never climb side or behind yourself unnecessarily.
 - 26) Do not jump or lunge to reach a hold.
 - 27) Avoid wet soil.
 - 28) Clean boot sole lateral before climbing.
 - 29) Do not use vegetation or artificial protection for hand and foot holds. Do not use crawling as hand holds.
 - 30) Avoid wearing gloves when climbing.
 - 31) Remove jewelry from the hands before climbing.
 - 32) When a climber falls, should the spring "latching" be engaged the belayer and to work (climber) below.
- 5. Belays - Belaying
 - 11) Procedure full body belays.
 - 12) Tie a safety line (knotless around the waist with an anti-slip-the-rope knotting with equalized tension) and hold the angling into an anchor point.
 - 13) Backlash the climbing rope as it will use freely through the brake hand to the climber.
 - 14) Place top climbing rope through guide hand around body to break hand; side wire rope will slide freely.

17) Same procedure as for 16) 2 above.

18) Belayer should "belly for work or free,"
Belay Clipping (as needed).

19) General.

1a) Only one ear should be at a time.

1b) Do not climb until so ordered by
your belayer.

1c) Do not substitute your rope or overtake the
belayer's while he has his slack free.

1d) Notify all the techniques of belayer
climbing.

1e) Route selection (ability, margin of
safety).

1f) Rope Commands.

Belayer	Clamber
On Belay Test	Testing
On Belay	
Climb	Climbing

Upjerk for Belay/Rope
Up Rope
Block

Rock/Belay point	Rock/Belay point
Belting	Testing
Tension	

Up Hangers
Off Belay

1g) Determination of equipment needed.

12) Equipment.

1a) Clipping rope.

1b) RIFC rope/couplers/belting.

1c) Weighting (as required).

1d) Slings (as required).

1e) Belay harness.

1f) Chocks (as required).

1g) Harness (if available).

13) Terrain gear.

1a) Tying in.

- Leader (back qualified) belays on # 1a) or
belays around the wall (if harness is not
available).

- Second (not necessarily belays on # 1
and/or belays around the wall (if harness
is not available).

14) Resources

- No. 1 (leader) slides belayed by No. 2
(belayer). The leader replaces protection
(slings or chocks) as required.

- No. 2 (second) and slides belayed by No.
1. Belays No. 1. No. 2 slides into place
of all hardware (slings, chocks and weightings
as he slides.

- No. 1 slides belayed by No. 2.

- Same procedure repeated.

15) When both climbers are of equal ability No. 2
may continue to climb, belayed by No. 1, or
alternating lead (see lead method).

16) Rappeling.

17) Selection of a rappel point.

1a) Belays (or use second self), place in rope
if possible (natural or artificial anchor).

1b) Rappel anchor higher than leading climber
if possible.

1c) Lead anchor (or safety and retrievability
of rope) if possible, use secondary anchor
point.

1d) Remove loose ropes or other obstacles from
the rappel surface as well as rappel
line/rope.

1e) Avoid face rubbing over sharp edges, and
the edge if necessary.

1f) Ensure rope reaches belier, or a good
collecting point and further progress is
possible. Tie the two ends of the rope
together at the bottom of the rappel line if
the length is excessive.

12) Method of Tying Off.

1a) A rappel line should have equal belayers
between all anchor points. Establish primary
and secondary anchor points. The rappel rope
should run between all two anchor points (a).

1b) The method of tying off the rappel line
will depend upon the availability and usability
of natural or artificial anchors.

- Use three anchor system. Tie off with a
3-line belaying

- Three litan anchor system. Tie off with a towline on a slight.
- Single litan anchor point. Tie off with a float from anchor towline.
- Whenever possible tie off the ropes into a primary set or alternate anchor point.

(1) Seat hip ropes

1a) Tie Ropes about (Figure 10-15).



Figure 10-15. Ropesel seat.

- Place center of sling rope on hip opposite brake line.
- Bring one end of the sling rope around the seat at the waist, lie the overhand wraps above the belt buckle.
- Ends of rope brought between legs without crossing under the buckle already passed over the rope around the waist, to form a tail hitch on seat hip. Bring the ends of the rope to the side hitch to the brake hand and tie with a square knot and two half hitches.
- Place wrapline through single rope around waist and through the ropes forming the overhand wraps.
- Wrapline is rotated overhead just as gate opens tow and away from body.

(2) Execution of ropesel

- Stand on one side of ropes as the square knot faces the other side.
- Slide shoulder rope into wrapline, pull an even length of line between the wrapline and the other side.

- Make round turn around the roll shaft of the wrapline with the rope between anchor and body.
- Rappel rope belt will brake hand to the rear in the waist of the back, guide hand on rope with arm extended, in front of wrapline.
- Legs straight, feet abductor stretch apart; maintain a good 'L' shaped body position, with the legs parallel with the ground and the feet straight.
- In a wall Rope Rappel the brake hand is kept in the waist of the back, regulate descent by leaning and sliding your feet.
- In a sounding rappel always without equipment the brake hand is moved out to the rear of the body (45 degree angle with the wire, locked) during its descent. To brake, lead the wire and gradually press the rope while simultaneously moving the brake hand to the waist of the back.
- Look over brake should to observe the route of descent.

(3) Back shoulder ropesel

1a) Tie Rappel seat to (2) 1a) above.

1b) Stand on one side of ropes, face anchor point.

1c) Wrap shoulder rope into wrapline.

1d) Pull up rope to the wrapline and lay it over the shoulder and back to the opposite hand (i.e., left shoulder to right hand).

1e) Wrap rope with brake hand, take up.

1f) Body position same as for seat tie ropesel. Look over the brake hand shoulder while descending.

1g) Brake by tripling; brake hand across chest, to the middle portion of the guide hand shoulder.

(4) Body ropesel

1a) Face anchor; straddle rope.

1b) Bring rope from behind, wrap the leg normally across chest, over opposite shoulder, across the back to the brake hand.

1c) Legs apart, feet wide, feet straight.

1d) Lead well set at an angle to the feet.

- 181 The rappeller leans with the brake hand pulled downhill and faces slightly sideways.
- 182 Lead with downhill foot corresponding to the brake hand.
- 183 To brake, bring brake hand across chest and lean back to keep the slip so that the feet are horizontal to the ground.
- 184 Keep guide hand on the rope above the rappeller's thigh for release back to crawl.
- 185 Headly rappel.
- 186 Face always to center.
- 187 Place rappel gear across the feet.
- 188 The heel raised the higher in the guide keeps the downhill hand to used to brake.
- 189 Descend always, full body, body is almost perpendicular to rock.
- 190 To stop, bring legs back in front of body and turn facing center point.
- 191 Upon completion of all rappels, separate and place ropes give voice on rope signal, "all rappels."

10-7. ROPE INSTALLATIONS.

a. Ropes.

- 101 Two sturdy poles, 4 to 10 feet long, about 4 to 6 inches in diameter.
- 102 The 12 feet sling ropes tied together.
- 103 Tie one end of the sling rope to one pole 2 to 3 feet below top edge of the 4-pole and all be located, with slings hitch leaving a 10 inch signal, with the locking portion to the outside.
- 104 Place rope poles side by side and make a 4 to 6 horizontal ropes around both poles, wrapping down from above sides. Near the sling ropes are used, two locking ropes are needed below the locking knot square knot with the hair hitched.
- 105 Make a 4 to 6 vertical ropes around both poles, around horizontal ropes, wrapped as tight as possible.
- 106 Tie the remaining rope to the tail of the clove hitch with a square knot secured with overhead knots. [Note that the two ends come from opposite sides so that the slings hitch will not become unlocked.

107 Tie a spreader rope between poles at bottom with round turn and two half hitches (over ground) or clove hitched (over pulley) to prevent rope from spreading. There is no slack in the rope between the legs.

b. Piled ropes.

1) Equipment.

- 101 Climbing rope(s).
- 102 Appropriately size sling rope for number for every 10 feet of the overall length of the installation.
- 103 2x long, nylon harness.
- 104 Chocks.
- 105 Balls, carriers, and hand drill.
- 106 Establishment procedure.

107 Rope installation.

- Rope suitable location (shelves, over-rocks, east of rapeltation, existing obstacles).
- Availability and timing of gather points (vertical and horizontal).
- Cross-over rope to a minimum.
- Rope end rope falling east or low.
- Vertical connections.

108 Installation.

- Two men party division for installation and maintenance. The leader is tied into a climbing rope which the second man follows.
- Installing rope anchors.

a. Upon identification of a suitable section site, the installer prepares it by driving a spike, nail, or securing a chock. He inserts a wooden web course his climbing rope through the profile.

b. The installer conducts climbing and establishing intermediate anchors approximately one every 10 feet until he reaches the final, uppermost anchor point at the end of the route.

c. The installer unites from the climbing rope will securely tie the rope into the upper web anchor.

d. The installer conducts a final tie from the safety line or harness into the fixed rope and over climb to the nearest intermediate anchor.

8. Intermediate wires are laid across tower utilizing main route, bypass system, and subdivisions; lightning is first done from the top down leaving steel sections where needed.

9. Installation is removed at the lattice anchor or with a transient lightning system.

111 Installation over lattice top.

1a1 Wire anchored to another anchor point.

1b1 Intermediate wires tied over lines when in lightning or heavy block setting where needed.

1c1 Installation secured at top anchor with lightning system.

121 Techniques for negotiating the tower top.

1a1 Use suitable hoisting and balance climbing techniques.

1b1 One man between anchors.

1c1 50 lb load one hand on rope at all times.

1d1 Use top line to help pull into the fixed rope.

b. Vertical Hoisting Line.

111 Equipment.

1a1 Climbing rope 13 strands, anchor rope.

Fixed rope, set setting rope.

1b1 Slings with the correct tie device.

1c1 Carabiner.

1d1 Airline coils.

1e1 Pulley installation one on each.

121 Establishment procedure.

1a1 Selection of site.

- Suitable low anchor point.

- Natural landing and unloading platform.

- Suitable clearance for loads.

1b1 Construction using Airline.

- Construct Airline loop per paragraph 10-7g above.

- Double the climbing rope to serve as the anchor rope.

- Lay a one foot right of anchor rope over rope of Airline.

- Drive tight line ropes forming the right so that the locking loop of the slow litches are on the inside and above the Airline leading on Airline poles.

- Anchor the A-frame with the anchor rope using a transient lightning system to the base of the installation.

- Adjust the angle of the A-frame so it leaves out over the cliff edge top rope loop a 10 degree angle when the system is under load.

- Insert the guylines or two auxiliary, take spread, take the anchor rope tight.

- Hoisting wire latched into auxiliary, after tying ends together with intermediate ropes to form Airline rope.

- Specially made test or loading line at loading and unloading platform or attach wire at rope, terminal and equipment are attached to the lattice top.

- Strapped vertical rope too far below fixed anchor the top of the A frame, over the spreader rope are anchored to a single point at the top of the installation. Overhead rope spaced 8 to 10 inches apart.

- Two men are stationed at the top of the installation on the unloading platform to assist litches.

- A pulling team is located at the base of the installation over the loading platform to pull the load to the top.

131 Operations.

- Wireline engaged to litch.

- Rope straddles.

- Monitor the entire installation in-base, rope, and anchors, correct position at they are installed.

141 Unloading procedure.

- Equipment.

1a1 Small intermediate climbing rope doubled for heavy and long spans.

1b1 Pulley mounted on tower climbing rope.

1c1 Carabiner.

1d1 Slings ropes.

1e1 Airline later Airline.

121 Establishment procedure.

1a1 Selection of site.

1b1 Suitable upper and lower anchors.

ii) Spool loading and unspooling operations.

iii) Sufficient clearance for loads.

iii) Construction.

- Construct an S-loop in accordance with the following:
- Spooler has sufficient space to the top of the tower and ground level and 2 feet between.
- Place a transport tightening system in each case of the spooler system. Run the cable along the tower and across the spooler system and tighten.
- Once the cable lines are tightened, the S-loop is formed in position with the two cable lines running over the tower. Anchor the loop at the S-loop.
- Tie a ring end of the S-loop cable to the tower and to the tower. Run the cable over the tower and to the tower. Run the cable over the tower and to the tower. Run the cable over the tower and to the tower.
- Construct a carrying rope. Join the end of a ring end of the S-loop cable and the S-loop cable. Run the rope over the tower and to the tower. Run the rope over the tower and to the tower. Run the rope over the tower and to the tower.
- Attach the carrying rope to the tower rope by means of the pulley or ring.
- Tie a ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope.
- Once a ring end of the carrying rope is attached to the tower rope, the S-loop is formed in position with the two cable lines running over the tower. Anchor the loop at the S-loop.
- Tie a ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope.
- Once a ring end of the carrying rope is attached to the tower rope, the S-loop is formed in position with the two cable lines running over the tower. Anchor the loop at the S-loop.
- Tie a ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope. Tie the end of the ring end of the carrying rope to the tower rope.

- Equipment on ground was attached to the spooler.

- The loop is formed in position with the two cable lines running over the tower. Anchor the loop at the S-loop.

17) Procedure.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

17) Spooler in position to start unspooling.

- Tyrolean Traversed.
- One man crosses at a time.
- Two rope bridges.

14) Equipment.

- 1a) Two nylon climbing ropes.
- 1b) Waxed/line material of lead.
- 1c) Slings ropes (one over 15 feet of rope to use as spreader).
- 1d) Two carabiners and one sling rope for each class of heavy equipment to be transported.
- 1e) One sling rope and two carabiners for each soldier.

c. Construction.

- 1) Construct two narrow bridges, one above the other approximately 2 feet apart at both anchors most high between top and bottom spreader.
- 2) Tie spreader above between the top and other ropes every 15 feet using a round turn with one half hitched on each rope.

d. Method of use: Load top rope with most loads, go lead on the lower rope, advance across. One man across (spreaders) can carry it across diagonally.

e. Precautions:

- 1) Limit span to 40 feet when using the 20 foot nylon rope.
- 2) Check knots and anchors for selective friction and wear.

10-B. CLIFF EVACUATION.

a. Litter evacuation.

1) Preparation of litter.

1a) Load the stretcher with poles 110 feet long, 3 inches in diameter with one or more tie tethers for litter stretchers. Poles even with litter handles to bottom end. Poles at the top of the litter will extend beyond the litter handles (approximately 2 feet).

1b) Load spreader bars along each edge point with wire or rope to prevent hinge joint from collapsing.

1c) Tie tail rope to lead end of litter.

1d) Pass one of tail rope through one strap and form loop around the stretcher.

1e) Two half hitches are made around the spreader bar, one on each side of the tied joint.

1f) Make short loop around opposite shoulder. 1g) Tie off with tail rope, halfway between end of canvas and litter handles.

1h) Hoop and thus prepared because the head of the litter.

2) Lashing security to the litter.

1a) Tie sling ropes one needed to secure the outer part of the body. Tie 2 handles around the upper part of the leg (leave the handle). Repeat on the other leg.

1b) The ends of the ropes are then brought diagonally across the body, under the arms, to the stretchers on the opposite side of the litter.

1c) Round turns made through each strap leaving the wire loop inside to facilitate ropes are brought across chest and tied together with lashing knot and the tail handle. 1d) Make at two additional tying loops, one tied to the upper stretcher with a round turn and lashing.

1e) Ropes are brought diagonally across body to lower stretchers.

1f) Round turns sets through each strap; ropes wrapped around both feet. Carefully run the ropes to the top of the stretcher, and tied together with a square knot on bottom or sides of feet.

3) Evacuation procedure.

1a) Release rope "on tail."

1b) Rescuers set up the available support (lashing) set more than 10 feet apart.

1c) The two rescuers (one right next to one and one left hand hooked using the seat tie) stepped up over the edge and raised litter approximately 2 feet, head in opposite direction to allow room for the litter, set sail for "litter".

1d) Litter moved over edge to the rescuers by rescuers.

1e) Litter is lowered down slowly; rescuers next to litter handles will guide handles; stay below the litter and guide it down, calling for "slack" or "brake" when the tail-rope is appropriate.

(4) Lower all the way to ground and come immediately away from edge to avoid falling back.

4. Rappel device (rigid back) evacuation.

(1) Preparation.

(2) Safety rope is tied around casualty's chest with a bowline.

(3) Belayer gear (see entry 2).

(4) Rappelier (RPI) up far west big branch.

(5) Latching the casualty.

(6) Casualty straddles rappelier's back.

(7) One end of the sling rope is placed on the rappelier's guide hand and the other end under the casualty's buttocks around to the front of the rappelier and run diagonally across his chest over his guide hand shoulder, under the right & left hip and horizontally across his back, under the other one hip, over the rappelier's shoulder and run diagonally across the rappelier's chest to his guide hand hip. Tie the two ends together with a square knot and the RPI sits down.

(8) Evacuation procedure.

(9) Rappelier holding head gear over casualty

(10) with a rope trailing under casualty legs.

(11) Rappelier tells rear rope and excludes a second man if RAPI.

(12) Belayers regulate the descent by providing rope or trailing to RAPI.

10-9. TREE EVACUATION.

A. Preparation.

(1) One man climbs the tree using one end of the rope with tie.

(2) He places the rope over a branch of the tree above the position of the casualty.

(3) He then ties a bowline on a sight.

B. Latching the casualty.

(4) With one loop over each thigh of the casualty.

(5) With rear rope, tie a butterfly knot large enough to pass over the casualty's head and chest.

C. Evacuation procedure.

(6) A man on the ground pulls the casualty and lower him from the tree.

(7) The climber can also bring the casualty tree down by making a round turn around a branch of the tree and pulling down the casualty.

(8) Climber prevents the casualty during the descent and prevents his movement from being stopped by intervening limbs or branches by rappelling using a rest air report.

CAPTIVE ESCAPE

SYMBOLIC SURVIVAL

11-1. EVASION. When you become isolated or separated in a hostile area, either as an individual or as a group, your evasion and survival skills will determine whether or not you return to friendly lines.

a. When unable to continue the mission or unable to rejoin your unit, leave the immediate area and move to your last rally point.

b. Observe actively in the area and form a plan.

c. Traveling alone offers the least possibility of detection, but traveling in groups of two or three is more effective.

d. Plan a primary and alternate route. Consider distance, cover, food and water. The easiest and shortest route may not be the best.

e. Food and water are daily requirements. You can do without food for several days; water, however, is essential.

f. Move at night. Use the daylight to observe, plan, and rest in a nice position.

g. Lighting only during daylight hours. Plan friendly lines under observation.

h. Attempt to identify the unit you will approach; note their movements and routine.

i. Approach carefully considering your approach route, use voice contact with the unit as soon as possible.

11-2. SURVIVAL.

a. With training, equipment, and the WILL TO SURVIVE, you will find you can overcome any obstacle you may face. You will survive. You must understand the emotional states associated with survival. "Knowing Yourself" is extremely important in a survival situation. It starts directly on how well you cope with various stresses, anxiety, pain, injury, illness, cold, heat, thirst, hunger, fatigue, sleep deprivation, stress, loneliness and isolation.

8. YOU SEE SURRENDER AND reduce the effect of being isolated behind enemy lines if you keep the key word "Surrender-Not-Defeat" foremost in your mind. THE ENEMIES can help guide you in your actions.

11) S - Size up the situation size up your surroundings, size up your physical condition size up your equipment.

12) U - Understand basic skills, don't be in need to know. Size your forces.

13) S - Remember where you are in relation to, the location of enemy units and controlled areas, the location of friendly units and controlled areas. The location of local water sources (this is generally important in the desert). Know how still, how good cover and concealment. The above information will allow you to make intelligent decisions when you are in a survival-critical situation.

14) V - Visualize your own goals.

15) I - Improve the situation can be improved. Learn to use natural things around you for different needs. Use your imagination.

16) U - Understand living. Remember your goal = getting out alive. Surrender, a refusal to give into problems and obstacles that face you, will give you the mental and physical strength to survive.

17) S - Act like the natives, watch their daily routines. When, where, and how they get their food. Where they get their water.

18) L - Live by your wits, learn basic skills.

11-3. SURVIVAL. In a survival situation, an individual may well find himself without a compass. The ability to determine directions day or night as an individual to navigate back to his unit or to a friendly assembly. Two methods that are easy to use when there is sunlight are the shadow-stick and the watch.

1. Use the sun to find approximate true north. This method can be used any time the sun is bright enough for a stick to cast a shadow. Place a fairly straight stick about three feet long and follow these steps (Figure 11-1).

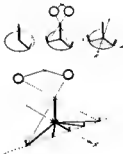


Figure 11-1. Shadow-stick method.

7. Watch method. You can also determine direction using a watch (Figure 11-2). The steps you take will depend on whether you are in the northern hemisphere zone or in the southern hemisphere zone. The northern hemisphere zone is located between 23.4 north and 26.6 north. The southern hemisphere zone is located between 23.6 south and 26.6 south.

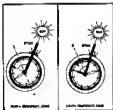


FIGURE 11-2. Watch method.

c. Procedures in the northern hemisphere zone using a conventional watch are as follows:

11) Place a small object in the ground so that it casts a definite shadow.

12) Place your watch on the ground so that the hour hand points toward and along the shadow of the object.

13) Find the point on the watch dial between the hour hand and 12 o'clock and draw an imaginary line from that point through and beyond the center of the watch. This imaginary line is a north-south line. You can then tell the other directions.

NOTE: If your watch is set on daylight saving time, then use the shadow cast between the hour hand and 1 o'clock to draw your imaginary line.

d. Procedures in the southern hemisphere zone using a conventional watch are as follows:

11) Place a small object in the ground so that it casts a definite shadow.

12) Place your watch on the ground so that 2 o'clock points to and along the shadow.

13) Find the midway point between the hour hand and 12 o'clock and draw an imaginary line from that point through and beyond the center of the watch. This is a north-south line.

e. A handy shortcut using a conventional watch is simply to point the hour hand at the sun in the northern hemisphere zone or point the 12 at the sun in the southern hemisphere zone and then follow the last step of the watch method above to find your directions. This shortcut, of course, is not as accurate as the regular method, but it is quicker. Your direction will usually which method to use.

8. Celestial navigation. On a clear night many stars are visible, and if you wait toward the North Star, you will be waiting northward. The North Star, however, is not the brightest star in the sky and is sometimes hard to find. In order to locate the North Star, you should use small

11) All other stars revolve around the North Star.
 12) The North Star is the last star in the handle of the constellation Ursa Minor (Big Dipper), and the simplest Little Dipper is often difficult to see.

g) The easiest way to locate the North Star is by using the constellations Ursa Major (Big Dipper). A straight line drawn between the two stars (labeled) at the end of the Big Dipper's bowl will point to the North Star. The distance to the North Star is about five times the distance between the pointer stars (Figure 11-3).

h) Directly across from the Big Dipper is the constellation Cassiopeia. It is made up of five stars and resembles a looped "M" or "W" depending on its position in the sky. The North Star is directly out from the lower star of Cassiopeia. It is almost equidistant between the Big Dipper and Cassiopeia.



Figure 11-3. The Big Dipper

i) South of the equator you can see the constellation Southern Cross in the sky (see Figure 11-4). The Southern Cross is a group of five bright stars in the shape of a cross that is 1,100 light years away. The top star forming the long arm, at the end of the cross and at an altitude to denote its declination is α Crux.

11) Imagine the long arm of the cross to be the feet of a person the length of the pole star from the top pole to the bottom of the cross is the length of the body.

12) The stars down the long imaginary pole to the bottom are select a letter I

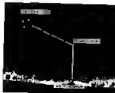


Figure 11-4. Southern Cross

11-4 WATER Water is one of your most urgent needs in a survival situation. You can't live long without it, especially in hot areas where you lose so much through sweating. Even in cold areas, you need a minimum of 2 quarts of water a day to maintain efficiency. More than three-fourths of your body is composed of fluids. Your body loses fluids as a result of heat, cold, stress, and exertion. The fluids your body loses must be replaced for you to function effectively. So, one of your first objectives is to obtain an adequate supply of water.

a. Purification. Purify all water before drinking, either (1) by boiling for at least one minute, plus 1 minute for each additional 1,000 feet above sea level or (2) by using water purification tablets or (3) by adding 8 drops of 2-1/2% solution of iodine to a quart (average) gallon of water and letting it stand for 15 minutes before drinking. Sage water collected directly in glass containers or in plastic is generally safe to drink without purifying. Don't drink urine or sea water -- the salt content is too high. Dig holes as you can be used, but new, gray tin may be salty. Boiling is good to salt and herbs.

b. Desert Environment. In a desert environment water has a tremendous physiological effect on soldiers. It is not only lost more readily and faster in desiccation, their water supply must be cut. There are four indications on signs of water that you should look for in the desert. They are: animal trails, vegetation, shade, and mineralization. Animals water supply is critical in a hot desert environment if a well is to survive and maintain the soldier's physical condition necessary to accomplish the mission. Well leading out and into water discipline and plan for water security. The soldier can use the following planning considerations for water security:

- (1) Units average water consumption rate.
- (2) Drop sites.
- (3) Evaporator supports.
- (4) 55 and 41 gallons.
- (5) Caches.
- (6) Margins of opportunity concept.

c. Survival water still. For the below ground still (Figure 11-5), you will need a digging tool.

(1) You should select a site where you believe the soil will contain moisture (such as a dry stream bed or a low spot where rainwater has collected), where the soil will be easy to dig, and where sunlight hits most of the day. Proceed as follows:

(a) Dig a low-radius hole approximately 3 feet across and 2 feet deep.

(b) Dig a ramp in center of the hole. The depth and the perimeter of the ramp will depend on the size of the container that you have to set in it. The bottom of the ramp should allow the container to stand upright.

(c) Anchor the tubing to the edge of the container by taping a large overcast that is the tubing.

(d) Place the container upright in the camp.

(e) Bury the unanchored end of the tubing up, over, and beyond the lip of the hole.

(f) Place plastic sheeting over the hole, covering the edges with soil to hold it in place.

(g) Place a rock in the center of the plastic.

(h) Allow the plastic to loose into the hole until it is about 15 inches below ground level. The plastic now forms an inverted cone with the rock at its apex. Make sure that the apex of the cone is directly over your container. Also be sure the plastic cone does not touch the sides of the hole because the earth will absorb the condensed water.



Figure 11-5. Survival water still.

11) Wet work soil on the edges of the plastic to hold it ~~securely~~ in place and to prevent loss of moisture.

12) Dig the irbs when not being used so that moisture will not evaporate.

d. You may drain water without disturbing the ability to using the irbs as a glass. You may want to use plants in the hole as a moisture source. If so, wear and dig the hole you should dig out additional soil from the sides of the hole to lose a slope or what to place the plants. Free passed as above.

11-B. PLANT FOOD. There are very, very plants throughout the world. Testing an individual seed a small portion of area per source across diameter, various internal structures, or death. Therefore, if you have the slightest doubt as to the viability of a plant apply the universal viability test described below before using any part of it.

a. Universal Viability Test. Before testing a plant for viability, make sure there are a sufficient number of plants to make testing worth your time and effort. You need more than 24 hours to apply the viability test outlined below.

1) Test only one part of a potential food plant at a time.

2) Break the plant into its basic components, leaves, stems, roots, buds, and flowers.

3) Soak the food for 24 hours or until soaked. Have it warm that small alone does not indicate a plant is viable.

4) Do not eat for 2 hours before starting the test.

5) During the 2 hours you are abstaining from eating, test the contact obtained by placing a piece of the plant you are testing or the inside of your stomach or wrist. Usually 15 minutes is enough time to allow for reaction.

6) During the test period, take nothing by mouth except purified water and the plant food being tested.

7) Select a small portion on a single component and prepare it the way you plan to eat it.

8) Before putting the prepared plant part in your mouth, touch a small portion to ~~inside~~ to the outer surface of the lip to test for burning or itching.

9) If after 5 minutes there is no reaction or your lip, place the plant part in your mouth, holding it there for 15 minutes.

10) If there is no reaction, thoroughly chew a sixth and hold it in your mouth for 15 minutes. DO NOT SWALLOW.

11) If no burning, itching, swelling, stinging, or other irritation occurs during the 15 minutes, swallow the food.

12) Next 2 hours, if any ill effects occur during this period, include vomiting and drink a lot of water.

13) If no ill effects occur, eat 1/8 cup of the same plant part prepared the same way. Next another 2 hours. If no ill effects occur, the plant part is prepared to safe for eating.

b. DO NOT eat unknown plants that have the below characteristics:

1) Have a sticky sap or a sap that turns sticky when exposed to air.

2) Are astringent.

3) Possess a green or yellow

4) Possess a purple, purple, or blue

5) Have a root-like leaves, buds, or tubers.

11-C. ANIMAL FOOD

a. Animal Food. Animal food contains the most food value per pound. Anything that grows, swims, flies, or lives in a possible source of food. When you catch fish, catch, kill and butcher it before this is possible. There are numerous methods for catching fish and animals in a survival situation. You can catch fish by using rats across a small stream, dig a line or by using fish traps and baits.



Figure 11-4. Setting a gill net in the stream

learning fish hooks and snares as indicated in Figure 11-7, and see them for conventional trapping, spearing and jigging.



Figure 11-7. Spears and fish hooks.

Trapping gear can be accomplished through the use of snares, traps, or deadfalls. A snare is a noose that will slip and strangle or hold any animal caught in it. You can use inner core strands of parachute suspension lines, wire, steel or steel hardware springs as well as fine wire from galvanized sheet articles to make snares.

The drag noose snare, figure 11-8, is usually the best available in that it allows you to move away from the site, since it is one of the easiest to make and easiest to set.



Figure 11-8. Drag noose

It is especially suitable for catching rabbits. To make the drag noose snare, take a loop in the string using a double or crossed knot. When setting snares, secure the loop by interlocking the end of the wire with the end of the tail of the loop's tail the other end of the string or wire through the loop to form a noose that is large enough for the animal's head but too small for its body. Use the string for which the wire is a sturdy grain. The grain should be large enough to wear the trail and rest on the bush or support (see above) forked sticks you have selected. A crossed snare will strangle the drag stick, pulling it until it becomes entangled in brush. Any attempt to escape tightens the noose, strangling or holding the animal.

Another type snare is the locking type snare loop (Figure 11-9) that will lock when pulled tight, ensuring the snared animal cannot escape.



Figure 11-9. Forming a locking-type snare loop.

Use lightweight wire to make this snare, i.e., bird wire, from vehicle or aircraft electrical system. To construct this snare, cut a piece of wire twice the length of the desired snare wire, secure the wire and attach the running wire to a securely placed object, such as the branch of a tree; place a stick about 1/2 inch in diameter through the loop end of the wire, holding the wire taut, turn the stick in a sliding motion so that the wire is twisted together. You should have four to five twists per inch; detach the wire from the branch and then remove the loop from the stick; make a figure 8 in the 1/2-inch loop by looping the loop over itself, then fold the figure 8 so the short loops are placed overlapping; run the loose wire ends through these loops. This forms a split snare that is strong. Then, tie the loose end to the stick like a drag rope equipped on branch you are using to complete the snare. This is an excellent snare for catching large animals.

Another means of obtaining game is the use of the deadfall trap as indicated at Figure 11-10A and Figure 11-10B.



Figure 11-10A. Trigger with deadfall.

on either side of the head behind the jaws. Keep your hands larger or use a stick or peg to prevent it from slipping inside the skin and strangle you. To preserve scales for making the skin into a bag, use Figure 11-11a:

1a) Strip the skin firmly against the head and cut off the head with a knife.

1b) Split the belly and remove the viscera.

You can use the viscera for making traps and snares.

1c) Strip the skin. You can use the skin for preserving, drying, storage, or making shoes.



Figure 11-11. Cleaning a snake

2) Feet: Your first step after killing a land or water or preserving is to stick the feet. It is better to freeze them, you can stir the feet. Keep it flat. However, when a foot is stuck with the skin on relative more good value. Madrasani are easier to stick while dry, but when feet are better to stick after washing. When you stick the feet --

1a) Cut off the feet sides of the body.
1b) Cut an incision in the abdomen, leaving and sides and the incision. Save the feet, liver, and heart for use. Thoroughly clean and dry the animals to use for storage.

1c) Wash out the abdominal cavity with clean water. You can boil feet or skin in on a grid over a fire. You should boil scavenger birds such as woodpeckers and lizards for at least 20 minutes to kill any parasites. Use the leathers from feet for protecting your arms, clothing, or bedding. You can also use leathers for fish bones.

1d) Madrasani Feet: The game you dry or smoke will generally be killed when you find it and therefore dangerous. Be careful when you approach a trapped animal. Use a spear or stick or kill it as you can keep a safe distance from it. After you kill an animal, immediately bleed it by cutting its throat. If you must drag the carcass any distance, do so before you cut off the head so that the carcass is protected from dirt and insects that might contaminate it. Clean the animal near a stream if possible so that you can wash and cool the carcass and skin parts. Sides and garments will leave a moist body as it the abdomen slices, wait until the animal dries before cleaning and drying the carcass. To air and dress the animal (Figure 11-12 and 11-13).



Figure 11-12. Skinning and gutting large game



Figures 11-12. Striking nasal pass

1a) Tilt beak down, fully up, or a slope if available. You can use tooth or brush to support it.

1b) Remove particles or water by sucking or blowing with stream in figure 11-12.

1c) Remove nasal glands at points A and B to avoid irritating nasal tissue (figure 11-12).

1d) Hold bird from tail in support. Hold the cut shallow so that you do not depress the stomach.

1e) Insert your index finger up into, feeling nose and fit into the body cavity. Peel the skin back several inches or more with a tooth, hair out of the way.

1f) Open the nasal cavity by splitting the sternum. You can do this by cutting to one side of the sternum where the ribs join.

1g) Reach inside and cut the sternum and peel it as close to the base of the skull as possible.

1h) With the forefoot end of the intestinal tract free, work your way to the rear, lifting out internal organs and intestines. Cut only where necessary to free them.

1i) Carefully cut the bladder away from the carcass so that you do not rupture the bladder before you separate meat. Pinch the ureters tightly and cut it beyond the point you are cutting.

1j) Remove the bladder.

1k) From the outside of the carcass, cut a circle around the anus.

1l) Pull the skin into the body cavity and out of the carcass.

1m) Lift or roll the carcass to drain all blood.

NOTE: Try to save as much blood as you can as it is a vital source of food and salt. Drain the blood.

1n) Remove the skin, make cuts along the inside of the legs to just above the heel or paw. Then cut the skin back, using your knife in a slicing action to cut the membrane between the skin and meat. Continue this until the entire skin is removed.

1o) Most of the particles are visible. The heart, liver, and kidneys are visible. Cut away the heart and remove the clamp from its sheath. Slice the kidneys and cut enough water if available, such as along lines. In all animals except those of the New Family, the gall bladder—a sac, dark-colored, elongated sac—is attached to the liver. Sometimes the sac looks like a blister on the liver. To remove the sac, hold the top portion of it and cut the liver around and behind the sac. If the gall bladder breaks and gall gets on the meat, wash it off immediately as the meat will not become tainted because of the gall.

1p) Clean blood splattered on the meat till glass over and halt, preserve the meat for a short time. However, if an animal is not tied properly, the blood will settle in the lowest part of the body and will spoil in a short time. Cut out any meat that becomes contaminated.

1q) When temperatures are below 40 degrees, you can freeze meat keeping for several days without danger of spoilage. If maggots get on the meat, remove the maggots and cut out the contaminated meat. The remaining meat is edible. Maggots, which are the larvae of insects, are also edible.

(a) Blood, which contains salts and nutrients, is a good base for soap.

(b) Thoroughly clean the intestines and use them for starting an soaking pad or leavings for general use. Make sure they are completely dry to prevent rotting.

All the head of most animals contains a lot of meat, which is relatively easy to get. Boil the head, saving the skin for leather. Clean the skull thoroughly and cut out the tongue. Remove the outer skin from the tongue while cooking. Cut or scrape the meat from the skull. If you prefer, you can roast the head over an open fire before cutting off the meat. Eyes are edible. Cook them but discard the entire globe in a slightly less clean. The brain is also edible in fact, some people consider it a delicacy. The brain is also used to tan leather, the theory being that the brain of an animal is analogous to tan for hide.

(c) Use the cartilage and ligaments of the body of large animals for leavings.

(d) The cartilage bones is a rich-food source. Crack the bones and spread out the marrow, and use bones in many ways.

(e) If the situation and time allow, you should preserve the extra meat for later use. If the air is cold enough, you can freeze for meat. In warmer climates, however, you will need to use a drying or smoking process to preserve it. One night of heavy smoking will make meat edible for about 1 week. Ten nights will make it fairly edible for 2 to 3 weeks. To prepare meat for drying or smoking, cut it with the grain in one-quarter inch strips. To air dry the meat, hang it in the wind and hot sun out of the reach of scavenging birds so that flies do not land on it.

(f) To smoke meat, you will need an enclosed area—for instance, a simple digger (11-14) or a pit. You will also need wood from deciduous trees, preferably green. Do not use cedar trees with an olive, iron, spruce, or other as the smoke from these trees give the meat a disagreeable taste.

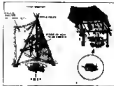


Figure 11-14. Smoking meat.

(g) When using the paraffin or other animal area with a vent at the top, the top line is the center and let it burn down to about, then above it with green wood. Place the strips of meat on a grate or hang over the top of the enclosure so that they are about 2 feet above the smoking coals. To see the fire method of smoking meat, dig a hole about 3 feet in diameter deep and 1 1/2 feet in diameter in diameter. Make a fire at the bottom of the hole. After it starts burning well, with clipped green wood or well branched of green wood to see it smoke. Place a wooden grate about 1 1/2 feet in diameter above the fire and lay the strips of meat on the grate. Cover the pit with grass, brush, leaves, or other material.

11-7. **SHELLING.** A shelter can protect you from the sun, insects, wind, rain, snow, hot or cold temperatures, and enemy observation. It can also give you food for rations and take precedence over your need for food, especially when you need for water.

a. Types of shelters. After determining your shelter site, you should know the kind of shelter (natural) you need. The basic listed shelters should be considered:

(1) How much time and effort are needed to build the shelter?

(2) Will the shelter adequately protect you from the elements (rain, snow, wind, etc.)?

(3) Do you have tools to build it? If not, can you improvise tools from material in the area?

(4) Do you have the type and amount of material available needed to build it? If not, are there sufficient natural materials in the area? You need to know how to make different types of shelters. Only one will be discussed in this booklet. Additional information can be obtained in AF 21-34.

b. **Barrier Shelter.** It takes only a short time and minimal equipment to build this shelter (figure 11-12). You need a trench, 8 to 10 feet of space, three stakes about 8 inches long, and two trees or two poles 2 to 4 feet apart. **NOTE:** You need the **STAKE** you will use for digging when to place the poles, and the **STAKE** direction. Near each tree pole at your feet will be two long wires. To cover the trench.

(1) Tie off the head of the stakes. To do this, pull the strands tight; roll the head together, fold it over twice, and tie it with the strands.

(2) Cut the poles to **STAKE** on the long side of the trench. Dig holes at the rear of the trench and the other side to the other barrier poles.

(3) Attach a string to each pole 4 inches from the end. Lay the string over the trench. These string will keep material from running down the poles into the trench. Using string is another way to prevent digging (poles) the shelter. Tie the string to the poles about 4 inches from the end of the trench. This allows water to run to and down the face without dripping into the shelter.

(4) Tie the string about 2 feet high on the trees (poles). Use a round turn and two half hitches with a quick-release knot.

(5) Spread the poles into the dirt and water it in the ground. To do this, get three sharpened sticks through the ground and into the ground.



Figure 11-12. Shelter used for barrier.

If you plan to use the shelter for more than one night, or if you expect rain, use a proper method to the shelter. You can do this by stretching a rope between two upright poles or trees and use it as a line for the poles at the trench. For another pole to the other side, pull it up so that it lifts the center of the poles, and tie it to the rear poles because the two upright poles are at the center of the trench. This method, however, will restrict your space and movement in the shelter. To give additional protection (poles) and rain, place another branch, your canteen, or other equipment on the poles at the trench. To reduce heat loss to the ground, place rear legs of sleeping material, such as leaves or dirt bedding, inside your shelter.

NOTE: When at rest, as much as possible report as your body heat can be lost to the ground.

To increase your security from enemy observation, lower the silhouette of the tent by setting the support poles, secure the support lines to the trees (use rope, canvas, chain, etc.), use the knee-high sticks in the tree canopy (possibly lashed to tent-pole), and angle the porch to the ground, securing it with sharpened sticks as above.

8. **Wind Protection Methods.** If you are in a wooded area and have sufficient natural sheltering, you can make an excellent tent in your field without the aid of trees or with only a few. You need work time to make it then the shelter previously mentioned, but it will protect you from most environmental elements. You will need two trees for the upright poles about 6 feet apart and one pole about 7 feet long and 1 inch in diameter (use a light pole about 10 feet long and 1 inch in diameter for poles, cord or vines for securing, the horizontal support to the trees; and other poles, rafters, or vines to enclose the tent. To save this tent-to:



Figure 11-14. Wind-Resistant Tent

(1) Tie the 7-foot pole to the tree trunks at points about equal in height. This is your horizontal support. If there is a fork in the tree, you can use the pole in it instead of tying the pole to place. If a standing tree is not available, construct a broad using Y-shaped sticks or two trunks.

(2) Place one end of the beam 10-foot pole on one side of the horizontal support. Tie with one loop-to-loop shackle, one more the outside of the tent is placed into the web.

(3) Drive some sapling or vines on the beam.
(4) Cover the support with brush, leaves, pine needles, or grass, starting at the bottom and working your way up like shingling.

(5) Place stones, leaves, pine needles, or grass inside the shelter for padding.

(6) In cold weather you can add to the comfort of your tent by building a fire-reflecter wall (Figure 11-15). Drive four stakes about 4 feet long into the ground to support the wall. Stack green logs on top of one another between the support stakes. Seal the top of the support stakes on the green logs with clay or mud. Fill in the spaces between the logs with twigs or small branches. With just a little more effort you can have a drying rack; cut a few 3/4 inch diameter poles through woods on distance between the logs-to support and the top of the fire-reflecter wall. Lay one end of the pole on the tent-to horizontal support and the other end on top of the reflector wall. Place and tie into place another slight across these poles. You now have a place to dry clothes, food, or gear.

11-8. **FIRE BUILDING.** A fire can fulfill several needs. It can keep you warm, it can keep you dry; you can use it to keep food, to purify water, and to signal. It can also keep you protected when you are in enemy territory in brushy areas, which can be spotted and seen from a long distance; it makes light, which can be used day or night and is a sure sign of your presence. Therefore, you should always keep your need for a fire signal your best to avoid enemy detection. When operating in remote areas you should always have a supply of materials in a convenient area and keep them on your person.

9. When collecting a fire to build a fire, you should consider the following:

(1) The area (terrain and climate) in which you are operating.

(2) The material and fuels available.

(3) How much time you have.

(4) Why you need a fire.

(5) The readiness of the enemy.

b. To prepare a site for a fire, look for a dry spot that has the following:

- (1) That is protected from the wind.
- (2) That is carefully placed in relation to your shelter if any.
- (3) That will concentrate the heat in the direction you need it.
- (4) Where a supply of wood or other firestarting material is available.

(5) If you are in a wooded or brush-covered area, clear brush away and remove the surface soil from the spot you selected. The cleared circle should be at least 3 feet in diameter or that there is little chance of the fire spreading.

c. Dig a fire hole. In some situations you may find that an underground fireplace will keep your heat. It circulates the fire to some extent and serves well for cooking food. To make an underground fireplace or Dakota fire hole (figure 11-17):

- (1) Dig a hole in the ground.
- (2) Do the upper side of this hole, poke one large connecting hole for ventilation.
- (3) Build your fire in the hole as illustrated.



Figure 11-17. Dakota Fire Hole

d. Above ground fire. If you are in an uncovered or wet area, you can use green logs to make a dry base for your fire (figure 11-18). Green logs which have been air-dried become an excellent fuel. Cut or break several green logs and lay them side by side on top of the snow. Add one or two more layers, laying the top layer logs in a direction opposite those on the layer below it.



Figure 11-18. Base for fire in uncovered area

e. There are several methods for laying a fire for quick firestarting. Three easy methods are cone, lean-to, and cross-ditch.

(1) Cone (figure 11-19). Arrange sticks and a few sticks of kindling in the shape of a cone. Place the center. As the cone burns away, the outside logs will fall inward, leaving the heart of the fire. This type of fire burns well even with wet wood.

(2) Lean-to (figure 11-19). Push a green stick into the ground at a 30 degree angle. Place the end of the stick in the direction of the wind. Place your sticks and kindling against the leaning stick. Light the sticks. As the kindling catches fire from the stick, add more kindling.

(3) Cross-ditch (figure 11-19). Form a cross about 1 foot in size in the ground. Dig the cross 3 inches deep. Put a large end of stick in the middle of the cross. Build a simple pyramid above the stick. The shallow ditch allows air to creep under the fire to provide a draft.

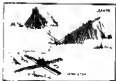


Figure 11-19. Methods for Laying a Fire

CURRENT TWELVE

FIRST AID

12-1. GENERAL: The semi-independent nature of garrison operations causes casualties to become a much greater consideration than on other missions. For this reason it becomes essential that all personnel learn how to recognize and treat injuries, wounds, and illnesses. The unit should also have a plan for handling MIA's.

12-2. LIFE-MAINTAINING STEPS: Applies to all injuries.

- a. Open the airway and restore breathing.
- b. Stop the bleeding and protect the wound.
- c. Check and treat for shock.

12-3. TREATMENT OF WOUNDS AND INJURIES:

- a. Wounds (all) - Expose wound, control bleeding, apply sterile dressing, treat for shock. Look for exit wound. Do not clean the wound.
- b. Jaw Wounds - Clear and maintain airway, stop bleeding with direct pressure, do not tamponade mouth shut, support jaw, position head to allow drainage from mouth.
- c. Head Wounds - Elevate head. Clear the airway and protect the wound. Position head to allow drainage from mouth. DO NOT give MORPHINE.
- d. Belly Wounds - Do not touch or regrade organs. Use towee, dry, sterile dressing. Give as fluid or liquids.
- e. Chest Wounds - Place wound airtight immediately with plastic or foil. Cover with dry, sterile dressing. Do not give morphine.
- f. Fractures - "Splint like where he lies."

6. Burns.

(1) 1st Degree - skin is red; 2nd Degree skin is blistered; 3rd Degree - skin is charred and tissue destroyed.

(2) After treating 3rd degree burns, do not remove clothing from wound - cut away clothing around the burn. Cover burn with dry, sterile dressing or cleanest material available. Do NOT apply grease or ointment. Avoid infection. Give cool salt/rose water orally. Treat or transport shock.

7. Shock.

(1) Pale, clammy, wet skin, nervousness and thirst. Patient may lose out.

(2) Lay patient on back, elevate feet, loosen clothing, keep warm but comfortable. Feed warm sterile if conscious. Turn head to left if unconscious.

1. Heat injuries include sunburn, heat cramps, heat exhaustion, and heat stroke. Physical exertion, loss of acclimatization, alcohol, dehydration, excessive consumption of alcohol, loss of sleep, wet, poor health, cumulative "fatigue" and accumulated body heat storage lead to little or no sweat response (inability to withstand high temperatures, blisters often on the left side), symptoms and treatment for heat injuries stated above.

(2) Sunburn: Sunburn is caused by overexposure to ultraviolet rays of the sun. Sunburn is prevented through proper use of clothing, sunblock, sun lotions, and limited sequential exposure.

(3) Attempt to shield the affected areas from further exposure. Sunburn treatments one to other heat injuries.

(3) Heat Cramps

(a) Heat cramps result from excessive salt loss in perspiration. They are painful spasms occurring in the arms, legs, and abdominal muscles.

(b) First aid administered by non-medical personnel should consist of cooling in a cool, shady area, and the drinking of cool fluids.

(c) If the cramps persist or recur, treatment by medical personnel should be obtained. Only medical personnel will determine need for salt replacement and oversee its administration as necessary.

(4) Heat Exhaustion (Faintness)

(a) This occurs as a result of excessive loss of water from the body. Dehydration of skin and muscles results in loss of feeling, rapid pulse action, body temperature will be normal or slightly above or below normal. Skin will usually feel hot but moist (clammy).

(b) Treatments: Lie flat and elevate legs if removed from the heat, loosening of clothing, elevation of the casualty a legs, the cooling of the limbs, see action situation.

(5) Heat Stroke

(a) Heat stroke results when the body is unable to dissipate or lose heat. HEATSTROKE IS REGARDED A TRUE MEDICAL EMERGENCY. HEATSTROKE MAY CAUSE DEATH IMMEDIATELY, AND AT LEAST. The onset is frequently sudden with a loss of consciousness and convulsions or delirium. The victim will not respond to consciousness after he has laid on the ground for a few minutes. The skin will be dry and hot, sweating is absent or greatly reduced. Body temperature is invariably high sometimes to excess of 104 degrees F.

the following criteria should be taken IMMEDIATELY to prevent heat exhausted victims from going into hypothermia and hypothermia deaths:

- The most important treatment is LOWERING THE VICTIM'S BODY TEMPERATURE. This should be accomplished continuously with PROLONGED EXPOSURE TO A HOSPITAL. WARMING is normally accomplished by air evacuation. However, the most rapid evacuation possible should be used to the civil aviation.
- Place the patient in the shade.

1. Remove all clothing.

2. Do not provide liquid by mouth unless the patient is conscious.

3. Immerse victim in water if it is colder than the air temperature or less the victim is only wet to pouring water again cooler than the air over the victim may give irritative burning and use ice. Cooling the head, the chest, and the abdomen are the most important parts of the body to be cooled. Additionally, evaporating to wet treated skin to produce skin hypothermia. Rectal temperatures should be taken every 10 minutes. Warming should be stopped or the use of thermometers.

Temperature readings and times should be recorded and reported to the medical facility.

4. Evacuate to medical emergency room or nearest TFC clinic.

5. Continue all first aid measures described above during evacuation.

6. Cold weather injuries can be divided into two categories, "freezing" type is the well known frostbite. The "non-freezing" type includes hypothermia, dehydration, trenchfoot, and immersion foot. Cold injury results from lowered circulation and the action of ice formation and cold upon the tissues of the body. Temperature alone is not a reliable guide as to whether or not a cold weather injury has occur. Many additional factors in various combinations determine cold injury production. These factors include humidity, wind speed, exposure time, activity, type and condition of clothing, and numerous hard factors.

7. Factors influencing cold injury are listed below:

1. Previous cold injuries - previous onset of cold injury increases the soldier's risk of subsequent cold injury.

2. Race: Blacks are more vulnerable to frostbite than Caucasians.

3. Geographic Origin: Persons from warmer climates are more prone to cold injury.

4. Acclimatization: The temperature of the air (or water) surrounding the head/body is critical to heat regulation. The body loses more heat to maintain the temperature of the skin when the temperature of the surrounding air is 32 degrees F than when it is 60 degrees F.

(a) Wind Chill Factor: Sometimes wind chill factor is the measure of the cooling and heating of the Wind Chill Factor. Wind velocity multiplies body heat loss under both wet and cold conditions. When the compass gives a figure which falls within the indicated ranges, stop or slow down, extra precautions must be observed to minimize cold injury. The equivalent wind chill temperature is especially important when the actual temperature is 32° or less. There are no actual readings of exposed areas if exposure is prolonged and traumatic drying of the coat is not practiced. In lower the wind chill, the lesser tissue freezing can occur.

(b) Type of Mission: Combat action resulting prolonged inactivity, long hours of exposure to low temperatures, or lack of opportunity to warm increase the incidence of cold injury.

(c) Terrain: Forest cover and soil conditions increase the potential for cold injury.

(d) Clothing: Clothing for cold weather should be able to trap air and so layers the warmer body heat. Clothing should be clean since soiled gear reduces the air-trapping thickness and does not warm with dirt and body oils. Wet clothing loses insulation value, therefore care must be taken to prevent accumulation of perspiration. The clothes should be kept completely wet especially to avoid injury to exposed body surfaces. The cold weather uniform is not complete without gloves and socks. Appropriate measures should be taken when a change in weather or activity alters the amount of clothing needed to prevent cold injury and on the other hand, overheating.

(e) Moisture: Water conducts heat more readily than air. When the skin or clothing becomes wet or soggy, the risk of cold injury is significantly increased.

(f) Dehydration: Possibly the most overlooked contributing factor causing cold injuries is dehydration. Individuals must regard their body fluids. In cold weather the human body needs special care and the consumption of water is very important to attain proper hydration. Glass bottles, tea, and hot chocolate are desirable, the consumption of iced beverages should not be relied upon for hydration and/or rehydration of the body. An acceptable substitute is hot apple juice with cinnamon which is pleasing to taste, therefore more likely to be consumed in amounts appropriate to prevent dehydration.

(g) Age: Within the usual age range of combat personnel, age is not a significant factor.

(h) Fatigue: Mental exhaustion may cause apathy leading to neglect of acts vital to survival.

(i) Consequent injury: Injuries resulting in shock or blood loss reduce blood flow to extremities and predispose the injured individual to cold injury.

(j) Discipline, Training, and Experience: Well trained and disciplined soldiers suffer less than others from cold.

101. Maintain some radiation is essential to provide the body with fuel to produce heat in cold weather. The degree of radiation absorbed normally increases as the clothes get colder. On the other hand, especially when wet and contacted persons in cold climates do not require more than the normally accepted amount of 2000-3000 calories per day.

102. Effective dress actively combats the loss of large amounts of body heat by convection. This loss of body heat combined with the loss of insulation value provided by the clothing due to the convection of air flowing over garments will provide the equivalent cold as individual convective to cold exposure.

103. Alcohol, Drugs, and Tobacco: Certain drugs, medications, alcohol, smoking on cooling systems, and smoking have adverse effects on the circulation, permeability, systems, and judgment of individuals and therefore should be avoided under conditions of extreme cold.

104. Heavy clothes to the weather.

105. Prevention of cold weather injuries, properly wearing cold weather clothing goes a long way toward preventing cold injuries. Listed below are the considerations one has in the prevention of cold weather injuries:

106. Dress personnel and properly trained with respect to the dangers of cold weather.

107. Adequate shelter, as includes timely replacement, and supply of supplies and proper clothing.

108. Effective means for the receipt, dissemination, and utilization of weather data

08. Keep feet warm when in shelter.
- Personal hygiene and care of clothing.
 - Proper care of feet and foot clothing.
 - Proper changing of socks, at least twice daily.

109. Proper use of gloves and mittens. The glove and mittens should be kept loose and protect the hand. The most useful glove when protection to the back against the wind.

110. Proper care of skin by using appropriate heavy duty cream such as U.S. Army and Dentist. Use of chapstick on lips, nose and cheeks. Personal alertness should be carried on watches.

111. Proper understanding. Personnel receiving information, weather, terrain, or status material as necessary and the state of the air cold weather clothing.

112. Listed below are the definitions, symptoms, and treatment for cold weather injuries:

1. All personnel identified as having a cold weather injury (CWI) or suspected CWI should be immediately sent to the rear to be treated as a medical sign.
2. Hypothermia.

113. Body with chill and water soiled and frozen of hypothermia when a person dies of exposure? It usually does not mean hypothermia. The man seems to be having an icy body a lower core temperature. The condition leading when less than 30000 the production of body heat. Hypothermia may result from conditions other than wind chill or water chill. The body can lose heat by convection, radiation, convection, evaporation, and conduction. Thus, wet clothing, sitting on cold surfaces, standing cold objects,

contact with light skin of low temperatures, and even something extremely cold like an acute hypothermia. An unprotected head is source of 50% heat loss up to three-quarters of the total body heat produced. Wet clothing can extract heat from your body up to 240 times as fast as dry clothing.

12) Symptoms include intense shivering, feeling of deep cold/numbness, muscle tensing, fatigue, poor coordination, disorientation, slowness of mind, slowness/irregular pulse, slurred speech, extreme mood/psychological, collapse, and death.

13) Treatments: shelter (avoided) from wind and weather, insulate from ground, replace any wet clothing with dry, increase level of exercise if possible, give hot drinks and food. If in a more advanced stage, it's best to, with dignity to dignity, receive via oral route. Evacuate immediately to care of a physician.

a. Dehydration.

11) First indication of dehydration will be the dark yellow color of urine. Other indications are higher temperature, upset stomach, and dizziness. Dehydration can be prevented by drinking plenty of fluids 10-15 ounces important and using a normal amount of salt in your foods. Do not drink fluids that contain alcohol. Porage drinking in the absence of thirst is mandatory to prevent dehydration.

12) It is important to note that the symptoms of severe dehydration are similar to those of hypothermia. To distinguish between the two, open the victim's clothing and feel the outer wall. If the skin is cold, the victim is probably hypothermic; if it is warm, he is probably dehydrated. However, this fact is not foolproof because only weather dehydration can also lead to total body cooling.

13) Treatment: Keep the dehydrated victim warm, but frozen fog clothes as circulation is not maintained. Gradually feed him warm liquids. Don't let his wet shoes soak more water up body heat. The victim needs plenty of rest. Get him to medical personnel as soon as possible.

a. Trench Foot.

11) Trench foot is an injury sustained as a result of exposure to cold and wet, ground soaking.

12) In the early stages of trench foot, feet are pale and numb, cold and stiff. If preventive action is not taken at this stage, the feet will swell and become painful. Because the early stages are not painful, you must be constantly alert to prevent trench foot.

13) If trench foot occurs, the feet should be handled very gently. They should never be rubbed or massaged. The feet should be soaked carefully with soap and water, dried, elevated, and allowed to remain exposed to cold temperatures. Attempt to stay off your feet if you have trench foot. See a medic immediately.

12-4. Evaluate, categorize, and prioritize the medical support needed in order to save as many lives as possible. Place them in a plan.

8. The leader must consider:

- 111 The situation - MDT-1. It may be necessary to treat casualties at the conclusion of the fight (instead of during it).
- 121 The number and location of the injured.
- 131 The security of the treatment area. It may be necessary to move undercover to assist a casualty or to move him to a more secure area.
- 141 Determine the assistance available, buddy aid, self aid, medical and nonmedical personnel and supplies, transport, etc.
- 151 Consider the need to support the battle with the medical available resources, including soldiers with medical training, who can still fit to fight.
- 161 Consider the need for resuscitation and surgery as to save lives.
- 171 Consider evacuation support available.
- 181 Consider higher.
- 191 Priority of aid because of potentially fatal wounds.

9. Sort the casualties into categories for treatment and evacuation priorities. Payoff control individual responsibility of the casualties looking for injuries that pose a threat to life or limb. Sort the casualties into the following areas and assign responsibilities:

- 111 Immediately after injuries which do not hinder the soldier going to fight. Consider self aid, buddy aid and return to duty.
- 121 Identify casualties with urgent needs for attention. The main concern here is problems connected with the 101 danger, 021 breathing, and 101 elimination. These problems are life threatening and are often easily correctable. Take the appropriate first aid and evaluate on a priority basis.
- 131 Identify patients with multiple, severe wounds and questionable chances of survival. Provide supporting assistance as feasible and transport 101 listed.

12-5. CATEGORIES OF PRECEDENCE DEFINITION.

URGENT Utilized for casualties cases that need to be evacuated as soon as possible and is an evac case that can be done to save life, limb, and sight.

PRIORITY Used when the patient should be evacuated within four hours or his medical condition will deteriorate to such a degree that he will become an evac precedence.

ROUTINE Requires evacuation, but condition is not expected to deteriorate seriously within the next 24 hours.

TACTICAL IMMEDIATE

Used when condition is not urgent or priority but evacuation is required as soon as possible as well as to endanger the requesting unit a tactical matter.

12-4. ARMY AEROMEDICAL EVACUATION REQUEST

- LINE 1. LOCATION
- LINE 2. RADIO FREQUENCY, CALL SIGN AND BUFSIZE
- LINE 3. PRECEDENCE,
URGENT PRIORITY ROUTINE IAC IAWED
- LINE 4. SPECIAL EQUIPMENT
WOUND, JUNGLE PENETRATOR
- LINE 5. NUMBER OF PATIENTS BY TYPE
LITERS AMBULATORY
- LINE 6. SECURITY-TO-PICKUP SITE
- LINE 7. METHOD OF MAKING PICKUP SITE
- LINE 8. ETHNIC & NATIONALITY AND STATUS
- LINE 9. NBC CONTAMINATION

12-7. EMERGENCY BURIALS. Emergency burials are those made in locations other than cemeteries because of the tactical situation. When military personnel make emergency burials, they will try to keep the burials like those in a cemetery, if the tactical situation permits. Burials must be reported to the next higher headquarters. They are a last resort. Organization Commander a procedural guide for emergency burials.

a. Ensure remains are always treated as a reverent, respectful matter.

b. Make an effort to keep burials like those in a cemetery. Bury remains away from areas that could be mined.

c. Keep identification tags, including the corrects attached with remains.

d. Spread 6600 Pencil in a circle, blanket, shelter half or other suitable material before burial.

e. Prepare a DD Form 501 for each person buried.

f. As a minimum, report eight digit net grid coordinates of each burial site.

g. Bury a canteen, can or other suitable container, whenever used, to the west of the grave. Place a copy of DD Form 501 in container.

h. Conduct a brief religious service of the appropriate religion.

i. Notify appropriate headquarters. Graves registration personnel can recover remains at a later date.

CHAPTER 13-1000

COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

CSS operations at platoon level are a vital part of infantry operations. They consist of logistical and personnel functions. CSS is integrated into the tactical planning process from the starting phases of operations. Well-planned and executed CSS is a large part of mission accomplishment and success of combat operations. Like DB, CSS is a combat multiplier. Soldiers well supplied with food, water, ammunition, shelter, and medical care are more successful in accomplishing their missions than those who are not.

13-1. PLANNING OF COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

The company headquarters plans, coordinates, and executes CSS functions for the company. The platoon leader is responsible for CSS, just as he is for everything that relates to his unit. He consistently stays abreast of the platoon's CSS status and, along with the platoon sergeant, plans and executes CSS. The platoon sergeant, however, carries the bulk of this load. He consolidates information from the squad leaders, requests support from the CO of 100, and assigns responsibilities to squads. Squad leaders plan and implement CSS operations for their squads, and they can delegate some functions to their lead leaders. Unit SOPs address additional responsibilities and duties in detail. They should standardize as many of the routine and recurring CSS operations as possible.

13-2. RESUPPLY OPERATIONS

Squad leaders must know the supply status for each member of the squad. As materials and supplies are used, squad leaders request resupply through the platoon sergeant.

Platoon and squad SOPs should establish levels of depletion for essential items of supply (for example, water, ammunition). All soldiers and leaders should know the level at which the platoon sergeant receives requests for all supplies and services from the 1st or 2d. There is an administrative protocol set for the platoon. Logistics requests, when required, are sent on to the company. Most essential requests take a lot of time to transport. Leaders should be used to send this. When operating on a company net, the platoon sergeant should approve all requests. The request is filled then or during the next resupply operation, depending on urgency. One of the most critical resupply functions is water. Even in hot areas, all personnel must drink at least two quarts of water a day to maintain alertness. Water can be resupplied either by collecting and filtering water sources or by distributing water tanks to the platoons.

4. When water is not scarce, leaders must urge soldiers to drink water even when not thirsty. This is due to the fact that a thirsty soldier, when not kept hydrated with the least bit of water through combat, will eventually die. The rate at which dehydration occurs will depend on the weather conditions and the level of physical exertion.

5. If water is in short supply, soldiers must use water sparingly for hygiene purposes. When in short supply, water should not be used to wash MREs. Water used too often on the bag skin is counterproductive because this increases the time it dries. However, when there is sufficient water to provide both water and hygiene when water is scarce, particularly in hot areas, when hygiene food is desirable. A centralized washing point can be used to conserve water and provide warm MREs.

6. In most environments, water is available from natural sources. Soldiers should be trained to find, taste, chemically or using field experiments, and use natural water sources. The use of iodine tablets in the open ocean and against bacteria to treat water. Iodine tablets that are not waterborne are to enter or to large have a fire consistently should not be used. (See FM 21-10 and FM 21-76 for more information.)

13-3. RESUPPLY TECHNIQUES

Platoon resupply is usually a 'push' system. The platoon receives a standard package of supplies based on unit usage factors and planning activities. The following describes the three platoon and squad resupply techniques. However, resupply techniques may select, leaders must ensure security. This involves security of the resupply point and routing personnel to ensure continuous resupply of crew-served weapons and CPGs, litter availability, and unit preparedness to react at every instant. Units use resupplying to reduce resupply, resupplying, resupplying equipment, or excess ammunition to the rear. During such resupply operations, the platoon must time the resupplying of excess items. Resupplying can be by truck, vehicle, or aircraft. Effective resupplying insures the platoon is ready to fight, resupplying, or otherwise sustain at unopposed contact.

8. In-Position Technique. The company (squad team) supplies, equipment, or both to individual fighting positions. This technique:

- Is used when an individual needs resupply.
- Is used to resupply single platoons at contact or during contact or when contact is imminent.
- Enables leaders to keep squad members in their fighting positions.

1. Service Station Technique. To use this technique, soldiers must leave their fighting positions. Selected soldiers move to a company assembly point to the rear of the platoon position, contact supplies, and return to their fighting positions. This technique is used when contact is not likely, and for one or several classes of supplies.

NOTE: The platoon leader should state the sequence for moving squads or sections of squads out of position. Companies may vary the technique by establishing a supply point for each platoon and moving the supplies to that point.

a. Re-position Technique. In this technique, the company communications section and equipment along a route to or at a platoon's position. The company then moves the platoon to the site. Though this method is used often during defensive operations to position supplies and equipment in subsequent operations, it is not as equally effective in other operations as a route. A route is a prepositioned and concealed supply point that—

- Can be set up for a specific situation or contingency.
- Can be used effectively by platoon and squads to reduce the soldier's load.
- Can be either above or below ground.

NOTE: An advantage route is easier to use but more likely to be found by the enemy, civilians, or animals.

11-4. TANK SUPPLY

Tank supply is often used to get supplies and equipment to the platoon. Rotary-wing aircraft are usually more precise in delivering supplies than fixed-wing aircraft.

Rotary-wing aircraft deliver supplies and equipment to an LZ. Fixed-wing aircraft deliver to DZs. The unit must secure the LZ or DZ. This helps protect the aircraft and ensure that the platoon receives the supplies. The platoon leader uses to estimate success to find the best way to move to and secure the LZ or DZ, and to receive the supplies.

11-5. MAINTENANCE

Proper maintenance is the key to keeping equipment and material in good condition. It includes inspecting, testing, servicing, repairing, modifying, recovering, and evacuating.

1. The platoon leader is responsible for the equipment practices within his unit. He must coordinate his platoon's maintenance efforts with the ID to ensure that the platoon is using the necessary maintenance effort. The platoon sergeant coordinates and supervises the platoon's maintenance effort. The squad leader is responsible for the maintenance of his squad's equipment.

2. Platoon communications equipment that needs repair is turned in to the company communications chief. Broken radios and other equipment are recovered to the platoon or the company collection point during battle, or turned in to the supply sergeant during peacetime operations.

c. All soldiers must understand how to maintain their individual and squad weapons and equipment in the related technical manuals. The platoon leader, platoon sergeant, and squad leaders must understand maintenance for each piece of equipment in the platoon. The unit SOP should specify maintenance periods (at least once a day in the field) and standards for equipment and the reports which

lines usually the squad leader, with appointments by the platoon sergeant and platoon leader.

13-1. TRANSPORTATION

Since the infantry platoon leader has no organic transportation, he requests transportation. He requests transportation support through the front sergeant or XO. They, in turn, request it from the battalion S4 or XO ACo if it involves helicopters. Whenever possible, requests for rescue equipment should be coordinated by vehicle, which there is a specific request set to.

13-2. SOLDIER'S LOAD

The soldier's load is a main concern of the leader. How much is carried, how fast, and in what configuration are important training considerations. Leaders must learn to recognize the most likely configurations based on available intelligence—how much he prepared for and possible variations. In some cases, leaders must accept what is given to lighten load. Even if some equipment must be left behind. Soldiers should not carry more than 20% of their total weight as a fighting load. No more than 45-50% if they accept during operations or strenuous marches. See FM 7-10 and FM 21-19 for detailed discussions on load planning, calculating, and management.

13-3. PERSONNEL SERVICE SUPPORT

The main platoon seeks personnel service support functions are strength accounting and casualty reporting. The platoon leader and XO are also responsible for handling the set up for the process to receive the traces of stress and continuous operations. Platoon leader coordinate personnel service support provided by the Battalion St. TAG, but will monitor team through the company headquarters.

a. Strength Accounting. Leaders in the platoon use battle rosters to keep up-to-date awareness of their soldiers. They provide strength figures to the company at specific intervals. During combat, they provide heavy strength reports upon request as when important strength changes occur. Control and accountability of personnel is combat operations is of paramount importance.

b. Casualty Reporting. During battle in the platoon, soldiers give by-name or roster number (MOS) treatment/evacuation information to the company headquarters. Soldiers with tactical knowledge of an incident may provide a DA Form 1300. This form is used to report MIA who were not recovered and missing or captured soldiers. DA Form 1300 is used to report those soldiers who have been killed and recovered and soldiers who have been reported. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant reviews these forms for accuracy, then forwards them to the company headquarters.

c. Services. Services include mail, financial matters, awards and decorations, insert the names, medical evacuation, religious activities, legal assistance, welfare, rest and recreation, and any other benefits related to the welfare and health of the soldier. Many services are standard procedures. The platoon leader must ensure that these benefits are available to the platoon. The front sergeant oversees services for the platoon.

d. Enemy Processes of War. Soldiers must remain EPWs and operational too and treat them humanely. EPWs must be allowed to keep their personal protective equipment. The senior soldier or MOS present is responsible for their care. If a platoon cannot evacuate EPWs in a reasonable time, they must give EPWs food, water, and first aid. Soldiers should not give EPWs comfort items such as cigarettes or candy.

11) EPWs who receive favors are those who are unarmable and those who are interrogable entities. Use the five 5's in handling them.

12) Search the EPW. One soldier should guard the EPW while another searches. The soldier searching should not get between the EPW and the guard. Position the EPW breast-against breast a tree or wall or have him get on the ground in a crouched position with his hands touching the ground. Search him and turn in all his gear and clothing. Take his weapons and account. Gather identification tags. Give the EPW a written receipt for any personal property and document taken.

13) Segregate all EPWs into groups of value and purpose and categories of officers, NCOs, enlisted soldiers, civilians, and politicians. This keeps the leaders from directing other efforts. Keep groups segregated as they come to the rear.

14) Silence EPWs. Do not let EPWs talk to each other. This keeps them from planning an escape and from causing each other or security. Report anything an EPW says or writes to any US soldier EPW.

15) Guard EPWs to the rear. Distance from EPWs over to the company where they are assembled and move to the rear for questioning by qualified intelligence soldiers.

16) Reluctant EPWs often taking them to the rear. Make sure they arrive safely. Watch out for escape attempts. Do not let them touch us, spread too far out, or about diversions, such as trail lights, that creates a chance for escape. At the same time, do not allow anyone to escape them.

17) If an EPW is wounded and cannot be evacuated through normal channels, he is treated by an enlisted EPW evacuated through medical channels. The EPW must be guarded by other than medical soldiers.

18) Before evacuating an EPW, tag him with an ID tag and equipment/document tag (figures 13-14 or a minimal tag figure 13-20). The tag should be duplicated into three parts and one of duplicate retained. If third duplicate should be submitted by 10 callouts for each part. It should be placed at the top and bottom, and reinforced for security for each of attachments.

19) Battalion interrogations may be appropriate in Ranger operations, however, when normal circumstances, interrogations will be conducted by trained intelligence personnel using the five 5's have been adapted.

<p>UNIT INFORMATION</p> <p>UNIT NO. _____</p> <p>COMPANY _____</p> <p>REGIMENT _____</p> <p>ARMY _____</p> <p>DATE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>LOCATION OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>TYPE OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>NAME OF AUTHOR _____</p> <p>DATE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>PLACE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>CHARACTER OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>REMARKS _____</p>	<p>NAME OF BATTERY</p> <p>DATE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>PLACE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>TYPE OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>NAME OF AUTHOR _____</p> <p>DATE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>PLACE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>CHARACTER OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>REMARKS _____</p>
--	---

Figure 12-1. GPM and document/equipment tag.

<p>UNIT INFORMATION</p> <p>UNIT NO. _____</p> <p>COMPANY _____</p> <p>REGIMENT _____</p> <p>ARMY _____</p> <p>DATE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>LOCATION OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>TYPE OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>NAME OF AUTHOR _____</p> <p>DATE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>PLACE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>CHARACTER OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>REMARKS _____</p>	<p>NAME OF BATTERY</p> <p>DATE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>PLACE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>TYPE OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>NAME OF AUTHOR _____</p> <p>DATE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>PLACE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>CHARACTER OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>REMARKS _____</p>
--	---

<p>UNIT INFORMATION</p> <p>UNIT NO. _____</p> <p>COMPANY _____</p> <p>REGIMENT _____</p> <p>ARMY _____</p> <p>DATE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>LOCATION OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>TYPE OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>NAME OF AUTHOR _____</p> <p>DATE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>PLACE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>CHARACTER OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>REMARKS _____</p>	<p>NAME OF BATTERY</p> <p>DATE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>PLACE OF CAPTURE _____</p> <p>TYPE OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>NAME OF AUTHOR _____</p> <p>DATE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>PLACE OF WRITING _____</p> <p>CHARACTER OF DOCUMENT _____</p> <p>REMARKS _____</p>
--	---

Figure 12-2. Personal document/equipment tag.

4. Captured Enemy Documents. Enemy documents are a valuable source of information; they must be processed as quickly as possible. Documents can be official or personal. When a platoon captures documents in the vicinity of an EPB, the platoon leader or the senior leader of the capture site is responsible for immediately securing and for reporting the capture of enemy documents to his next higher leader. That leader is responsible for ensuring the documents are properly tagged. The leader ensures the documents necessary for the GPM to the point of turnover to the company.

4. Captured Enemy Equipment and Associated Technical Documents. Equipment and documents captured in action, TMs, and so on are a valuable source of information. They must be kept together and guarded throughout the capture and processed on capture in greatest haste, always, or immediately. Equipment and documents must be tagged. Captured enemy medical supplies and supplies will not be used on U.S. casualties. It should be stored in use on captured sites.

13-9. HEALTH SERVICES SUPPORT

States health services suggest aspects of the prevention, treatment, and evacuation of casualties. Prevention of chemical, biological, and nuclear threats addresses disease and antibiotic injuries or damage. Understanding and applying the principles of field hygiene and sanitation, preventing weather-related injuries, and conducting air raids a special condition can streamline any activities. (See TMs 21-10 and 21-11.)

5. The unit SOP should address casualty evacuation procedures in detail. It must clearly state what personal protective equipment remains with and is removed with the casualty. The casualty's weight and equipment is handled by the unit, but included in appropriate instructions, food, water, special equipment or supplies in the state being by hand to the next LORPAC, medical zone, RSOZ, and other special markings are made indicated and are assigned to their soldiers.

101 The unit SOP must include the following:

- Duties and responsibilities of key personnel in planning and executing casualty evacuation.
- Methods of evacuation.
- Equipment for maintaining and safeguarding weight, equipment, and equipment.

(2) Paragraph 101 The SOP must provide the following:

- Location of casualty collection points (spatial, tempo, tactical).
- Procedures and responsibilities for medical evacuation.
- Planned use of medical transportation assets for evacuation.
- Procedures for tracking and evacuation time and mileage capabilities.
- Communication nets for evacuation requests.
- A time when the evacuation situation will begin and any necessary actions are in collection and evacuation. This prevents critical assets from being diverted from the fight.

6. Leaders will be prepared to direct and evaluate activities. They must understand the plan and casualty evacuation and immediately begin to execute it once casualties occur. The plan must be flexible in case of change, and to begin execution of activities. If an evacuation is needed, each one should understand and the leaders in the plan must be executed as planned. Plans, and evacuation activities. Leaders of active activities must maintain the soldier until he has been evacuated to the destination and action. The company and battalion casualty evacuation plan should ensure responsibility for the casualties as far forward as possible. Activities (plans and SOP) should get up the casualties as far forward as possible and the tactical situation permits. Any vehicle at the SO can be used as transport activities.

7. At least one soldier at each level must be trained as a combat lifesaver to help the soldier live and survive.

casualties. The littermen are part of the unit and are NOTED (see 11). They provide initial treatment until medical personnel can treat casualties, but only after their primary infantry duties are complete. They can also help in triage, treatment, or help for patients after medical personnel arrive, if the tactical and medical situations allow. The platoon sergeant supervises this effort.

d. Treatment of casualties generally begins at the conclusion of the engagement, during the reorganization of the unit. Casualties are treated where they fall in order to save cover and concealment by the casualty himself, a buddy, an observer, or a medical litterbearer. They are then evacuated by litterbearer or light-weight litters to the platoon casualty collection point. This point is chosen by the platoon leader in the OPORD or by the platoon sergeant as needed on site. When selecting the evacuation point, the leader must consider cover and concealment, security, paths in which to treat casualties, route signs, and air access. MIA are not collected in or near the casualty collection or evacuation points. As the casualties are collected, they are triaged, treated and evacuated per fragment. The goal is to establish the greatest good for the greatest number. The casualty categories are immediate, urgent, minor, and expectant.

11) Immediate--Can save life or limb

- 1a) Air obstruction.
- 1b) Respiratory and cardiorespiratory failure
- 1c) Cardiorespiratory failure is not considered an "immediate" condition on the battlefield; it is classified as expectant.
- 1d) Reseal airway bleeding.
- 1e) Shock.

- 1a) Swelling about mouth, if respiratory distress is severe.
- 1b) Second or third degree burns at the face and neck, or serious lacerating wounds of respiratory distress.
- 1c) After casualty with limb is immobilizing condition has been initially treated, no further treatment will be given until other "immediate" casualties have been treated.

12) Urgent--Less Risk by Treatment, Needs Relief

- 1a) Open Chest Wounds.
- 1b) Penetrating abdomen wound.
- 1c) Severe eye injury.
- 1d) Amputated limb without apparent blood supply.
- 1e) Other open wounds.
- 1f) Fractures.
- 1g) Second and third degree burns not involving the face and neck or genitals.

13) Minor--Can be Self Aid or Buddy Aid.
Patients in the category are not evacuated to a medical treatment facility.

- 1a) Minor lacerations.
- 1b) Contusions.
- 1c) Bruises.
- 1d) Minor closed bone fractures.
- 1e) Partial thickness burns (under 20%).

14) Expectant--Little Hope of Recovery. This category should be used only if resources are limited

STEP	DESCRIPTION	APPROXIMATE DURATION	RESOURCES
1	Identify the information needed for the request.	15 minutes	Requester
2	Obtain the information from the source.	15 minutes	Requester, Source
3	Review the information for accuracy and completeness.	15 minutes	Requester
4	Prepare the request form.	15 minutes	Requester
5	Submit the request to the appropriate authority.	15 minutes	Requester
6	Follow up on the request to ensure it is processed.	15 minutes	Requester
7	Receive the information and review it for accuracy.	15 minutes	Requester
8	Disseminate the information to the appropriate personnel.	15 minutes	Requester
9	Archive the information for future reference.	15 minutes	Requester
10	Evaluate the request process for effectiveness.	15 minutes	Requester

Table 2-1. Procedures for information collection and MEDVAC request preparation (continued).

STEP	DESCRIPTION	APPROXIMATE DURATION	RESOURCES
1	Identify the information needed for the request.	15 minutes	Requester
2	Obtain the information from the source.	15 minutes	Requester, Source
3	Review the information for accuracy and completeness.	15 minutes	Requester
4	Prepare the request form.	15 minutes	Requester
5	Submit the request to the appropriate authority.	15 minutes	Requester
6	Follow up on the request to ensure it is processed.	15 minutes	Requester
7	Receive the information and review it for accuracy.	15 minutes	Requester
8	Disseminate the information to the appropriate personnel.	15 minutes	Requester
9	Archive the information for future reference.	15 minutes	Requester
10	Evaluate the request process for effectiveness.	15 minutes	Requester

Table 2-1. Procedures for information collection and MEDVAC request preparation (continued).

13-10. PRELIMINARY ORDER.

A Preliminary Order (PADO) provides timely changes in existing orders. The format for a PADO is the five-point contingency format. Only those items that have changed since the last OPOD should be included. If a significant change in the mission scope or a new mission is received, a complete OPOD may be issued rather than a PADO.

FIVE POINT CONTINGENCY PLAN

During a tactical mission, the platoon/squad leader must issue a five-point contingency plan before departing his unit. Prepare for such a departure with the leaders' path, timing, an alternate communication, an alternate five-point contingency plan (see specific situations referenced in the play-by-hand leader. They provide his and the unit specific information on the leader's mission and guidance from the departing leader on how to preserve the unit without compromising the mission, in his absence.

FIVE POINT CONTINGENCY PLAN FORMAT

1. Going. Where the platoon/squad leader is going.
2. Contact. Who is the PL/PL leading with you.
3. Time. Time of exit point.
4. What. What is to do if he does not return in time.
5. Action. Actions to carry out if you are:
 - a. If the PL/PL has enemy contact:
 1. The PL/PL will _____.
 2. The unit (if) will _____.
 - b. If the unit (if) has enemy contact:
 1. The PL/PL will _____.
 2. The unit (if) will _____.

Use the acronym FOTM, when above, to facilitate quick and effective use of the 5-point contingency plan.

CHAPTER CONTINUED

RECONNAISSANCE, SURVEILLANCE, AND TARGET IDENTIFICATION DATA

10-1. GENERAL. Training in the operations for business is critical. The philosophy for training in the use of night vision devices should be addressed by realistic, sustained, and intensive training focused on night, infrared scenarios. To ensure the soldier's skill in using night vision devices, leaders must train them often enough to prevent skill decay.

a. Night vision device operators must be trained during training and operations must be rotated to the same proficiency level as the primary operators.

b. Training with night vision devices should, as a minimum, include equipment adjustment, maintenance, equipment, and target acquisition. Documenting proficiency in using and employing night vision devices is necessary prior to conducting night tactical exercises.

c. Types of night vision device normally found in TOE units include:

1. AN/PVS-4 (figure 10-1). The night is a second generation night vision device, designed primarily as a backup for accuracy, when individual operators find it difficult to use as a near-back night observation device. It does not have a standby or "white-out" as the first generation night vision system. The device consists of the AN and ANA rifles, ANA carrying gun, ANA sighting rifle, ANA Low, and the ANA grenade launcher. Its characteristics are:

Weight	3.7 Pounds
Range	400 meters (night) / 200 meters (standby)
Magnification	X3.1
Field of view	15 degrees
Power	Battery (2.7 volt lithium battery)

13-10. PRELIMINARY ORDER.

A Preliminary Order (PADO) provides timely changes in existing orders. The format for a PADO is the five-point contingency format. Only those items that have changed since the last OPOD should be included. If a significant change in the mission scope or a new mission is received, a complete OPOD may be issued rather than a PADO.

FIVE POINT CONTINGENCY PLAN

During a tactical mission, the platoon/squad leader must issue a five-point contingency plan before departing his unit. Prepare for such a departure using the leaders' path, timing, as format described in the example. Five-point contingency plans give specific, situation-related instructions to the stay-behind leader. They provide him and the unit with information on the leader's mission and guidance from the departing leader on how to preserve the unit without misinterpreting the leader's absence.

FIVE POINT CONTINGENCY PLAN FORMAT

1. Going. Where the platoon/squad leader is going.
2. Orders. Who is the PL/PL leading with you.
3. Time. Time of unit going.
4. What. What is to do if he does not return in time.
5. Actions. Actions to carry out if you are:
 - a. If the PL/PL has any contacts:
 1. The PL/PL will _____.
 2. The unit (if) will _____.
 - b. If the unit (if) has enemy contacts:
 1. The PL/PL will _____.
 2. The unit (if) will _____.

Use the acronym FOTM, when above, to facilitate quick and effective use of the 5-point contingency plan.

CHAPTER CONTINUED

RECONNAISSANCE, SURVEILLANCE, AND TARGET IDENTIFICATION DATA

101. GENERAL. Training in the operations for business is critical. The philosophy for training in the use of night vision devices should be addressed by realistic, sustained, continuous training focused on night, infrared scenarios. To maintain the soldier's skill in using night vision devices, leaders must train them often enough to prevent skill decay.

a. Night vision device operators must be trained during training night operations must be rotated to the same proficiency level as the primary operators.

b. Training with night vision devices should, as a minimum, include equipment adjustment, maintenance, equipment, and target acquisition. Documenting proficiency in using and employing night vision devices is necessary prior to conducting night tactical exercises.

c. Types of night vision device normally found in TOE units include:

1. AN/PVS-4 (figure 13-1). The night is a second generation nightlight system, designed primarily as a means for accurate, direct individual observation from night. It may be used as a non-hat night observation device. It does not have a tendency to "whiff-out" as the first generation nightlight system. The device consists of the AN and ANA rifles, ANA viewing gun, ANA sighting rifle, ANA/Low, and the ANA grenade launcher. Its characteristics are:

Weight	3.7 Pounds
Range	400 meters (nightlight) 200 meters (starlight)
Magnification	X3.1
Field of view	15 degrees
Power	Battery (2.7 volt lithium battery)



Figure 14-1. AN/PVS-4

121 Night Vision goggles AN/PVS-5 (Figure 14-2). The goggles are a lightweight, battery powered, passive night vision device worn on the head. It provides capabilities for reading, performing manual tasks, controlling, and conducting surveillance. It has a built-in infrared source used to provide IR illumination for nighttime viewing. Its characteristics are:

Weight: 1.8 pounds
 Range: 150 meters-noonlight
 30 meters-starlight
 Capabilities: manual target
 magnification: 1X (unlit)
 Field of view: 40 degree Power, 3000070 (2.7 volt battery). An alkaline battery.



Figure 14-2. AN/PVS-5

122 Night vision goggles AN/PVS-7 (Figure 14-3). These goggles will replace the AN/PVS-5. They provide improved night vision at lower light levels than the AN/PVS-5. Its characteristics are:

Weight: 5.5 pounds
 Range: 150 meters-noonlight
 30 meters-starlight
 Capabilities: manual
 magnification: 1X (unlit)
 Field of view: 40 degree Power, 30 00070
 (2.7 volt battery, An alkaline battery).



Figure 14-3. AN/PVS-7.

(8) Timing means (TME). TME are among the most items sold to the reconnaissance, surveillance and target acquisition family of systems. They are used exclusively on surveillance systems. TME provide information for target acquisition, intelligence and alert or early warning, depending on the end use.

(9) Precision early warning systems (PEWS) (figure 14-4) is a lightweight, self-contained, portable intrusion detection system designed for small units. The systems are mounted (usually) in forward combat areas. The number and type of sensors to be employed in a PEWS are varied and depend upon specific mission requirements. The characteristics are:

- Weight: 15 pounds
- Type sensors: Type I Sensor, seismic, magnetic, soil contact and
- Type II Sensors: Effect (magnetic), seismic, soil conductance
- Detection range: 10 meters (magnetic and electro-magnetic)
- Delivery means: Hand carried



Figure 14-4. PEWS

14-3 EMPLOYMENT.

8. The employment of night vision devices must be done with care to prevent any light entering from the forward of the device. Also, the employment of the forward portion of the device is a common decision. Unnecessary battlefield illumination must be suppressed, and all infrared radiation must be coordinated so to extent and direct the width range of the sensors. Care must be taken to avoid detection by the enemy.

9. Light and Atmospheric Conditions. Night vision devices are most effective on nights with slight moonlight and starlight. The blurring effect of artificial light from searchlights, flares, illuminating shells, or a concentration of mortar and artillery fires may be offset by not looking directly at these light sources or by rapidly closing your eyes against sudden flashes. Care to not reduce effective range. Condensation on lenses may be reduced by applying an anti-fog solution.

10. In the Defense Scenario with night vision devices are better able to cover their areas of responsibility during hours of darkness, and designate targets to weapon crews in the vicinity.

a. Patrol Operations:

(1) Operations during periods of stated stability may utilize night vision devices for detecting the presence or destruction enemy elements. This equipment may also be used during movement, e.g., a forward danger area by rear and the area security elements to provide early warning.

(2) A unit generally utilizing night vision equipment may identify enemy areas in a various count area to an accurately and effectively observe the objective.

(3) Accuracy can be made more effective by utilizing night vision devices to observe the enemy to be destroyed. The enemy and their weapons can be recognized and the most favorable angle is included the actual can be chosen. The attack can be effectively organized by observing the enemy's actions and defensive measures taken after the initiation of the attack.

18) On a night, night vision equipment may be at security positions, support weapons positions and the DAP.

19) In the parking base, the night vision goggles can be used to watch, clear, and secure the area. The leader can use the equipment to verify fields of fire and avenues of approach as well as soldiers verifying their sectors of fire.

20) Night observation devices can be used as means of friendly lines to find the passage point and aligning with infrared source.

21) A rotation system must be employed when using night vision devices for an extended period of time due to eye fatigue. Only 50 percent of a unit's personnel should be employing night vision devices. The remainder should be using their natural senses to detect the enemy.

CHAPTER 2

DEFINITIONS & RULES

2-1. DEFINITIONS. A working knowledge of explosives and detonating is essential for the successful completion of many paratrooper missions. Units may use explosives in many different ways to destroy enemy equipment or to create obstacles to impede enemy movement. Leaders must learn how to compute and place charges for destruction of common types of military targets. A reproduction of the Definition Card, STA 2-10-28, appears on the following page.

Cratering Charges



Cratering Charge



Cratering Charge



Cratering Charge

Cratering Charge

100 lb TNT Charge

100 lb ANFO Charge

Cratering Charge	Cratering Charge					
	100 lb TNT Charge	100 lb ANFO Charge	100 lb TNT Charge	100 lb ANFO Charge	100 lb TNT Charge	100 lb ANFO Charge
100 lb TNT Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb ANFO Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb TNT Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb ANFO Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb TNT Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb ANFO Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb TNT Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb ANFO Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb TNT Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb ANFO Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb TNT Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb ANFO Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb TNT Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100
100 lb ANFO Charge	100	100	100	100	100	100

Cratering Charge

Cratering Charge	
100 lb TNT Charge	100 lb ANFO Charge

BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES

1. BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES
2. BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES
3. BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES
4. BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES
5. BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES
6. BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING

BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES

1. BRANCHING CHARGES
2. BRANCHING CHARGES
3. BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES

Branching Charges (Continued)

BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES

Branching	Branching	Branching
BRANCHING CHARGES	BRANCHING CHARGES	BRANCHING CHARGES
BRANCHING CHARGES	BRANCHING CHARGES	BRANCHING CHARGES
BRANCHING CHARGES	BRANCHING CHARGES	BRANCHING CHARGES
BRANCHING CHARGES	BRANCHING CHARGES	BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES



BRANCHING CHARGES

BRANCHING CHARGES - BRANCHING CHARGES

Branching Charges (Continued)

15-3. NONELECTRIC FIRING SYSTEMS.

a. Components are assembly for detonation, nonelectric fuse igniter (M40), time fuse, trigger, nonelectric blasting cap.

b. Procedure for assembly:

- 1) Cut and bleed a six-inch length of time fuse.
- 2) Cut off a three-foot length of time fuse and check burning rate.
- 3) Note time it takes for the fuse to burn.
- 4) Compute the burning rate per foot by dividing the time it takes by the length in feet.
- 5) Cut the time fuse long enough to permit person to have a safe distance away at a normal pace.
- 6) Secure one blasting cap. Inspect for foreign matter. If foreign matter does not come out, replace of the cap and secure another.
- 7) Place blasting cap on time fuse.
- 8) Crimp the blasting cap at a point 1/8 to 1/4 of an inch from the case and Figure 15-4i.



Figure 15-4. Dripping on the Cap.

9) Slide the end of the time fuse through the blasting cap through the crimping adapter. If crimping adapter is not available, insert cap into nail and secure with string or tape.

- 1) Attach M40 fuse igniter (Figure 15-5i).

NOTE: If smoke does not appear two seconds after quit ring has been pulled, reason for smoking will not reach into position and try to ignite again. If this does not work, clear area, and treat as a dud.



Figure 15-5. M40 fuse igniter

NOTE: If a fuse lighter is not available, moist the end of the fuse. Insert a match head into the split end, and light the match with another match, or rub the abrasive side of the cartridge against the match head (Figure 15-6).



Figure 15-6. Lighting time fusing fuse with match.

c. Detonating cord firing systems.

iii Methods of use. A detonating cord firing system is the most versatile and easily installed. It is useful for underwater and underground fusing because the fuses and one of the initiating systems may remain above the water or ground.

(2) To initiate the detonating cord, use an electric system consisting of an electric blasting cap, initiated by a fusing machine or other power source, or a nonelectric blasting cap, initiated by a fuse lighter and a length of time fusing fuse.

(3) Attach the blasting cap, electric or nonelectric, to a gauge 2 inches from the free end of the detonating cord by numerous wraps of string, rope, cloth, tape or by an M1 detonating cord slit.

(4) Detonating cord connections.

(a) Square knot connection (Figure 15-7). Square knot should be pulled tight to splice ends of the detonating cord. To ensure detonation from a dry portion of the cord, at least a 4-inch length should be left free at each side of the knot. DO NOT remove labels when it covers the detonating cord. The best way to detect an "air" or in the ground, but detonate the cord from the dry end.

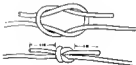


Figure 15-7. Square knot connections.

101 Branch line connections. Split tines is utilized with one extra turn (Figure 15-6). The angle formed by the branch line and the end end of the main line should not be less than 90 degrees from the direction from which the line is coming. At a smaller angle, the branch line may be taken off the main line without being separated. To ensure positive separation from the dry end of the line, at least a length of the rounded end of the branch line should be left free beyond the tie (Figure 15-6).

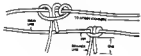


Figure 15-6. Split tines with one extra turn.

102 Ring made with branch lines (Figure 15-7). Make a ring made by bringing the main line in the form of a loop and attaching it to itself with a split tines with one extra turn. This will determine an almost unlimited number of charges.

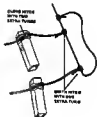


Figure 15-7. Ring made with branch lines.

10. Nonelectric dual firing system. This system consists of two independent electric systems for firing a single charge or set of charges. If two or more charges are to be fired simultaneously, lay out two detonating cord ring wires and the case branch line from each charge into each ring wire. Figure 15-10 illustrates the layout for a nonelectric dual firing system.

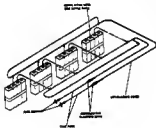


Figure 15-10. Nonelectric dual firing system.

15-4. FIRING CONTACT.

4. Detonating cord primer. Detonator blocks can be primed with detonating cord in several ways.

NOTE: A 4-inch length of detonating cord yields the same output as a 1-footing one. However, it will not detonate as reliably as a one because its lower output is not as concentrated. Use the methods that follow to prime detonator blocks with detonating cords. The most reliable method is to prime a nonelectric block at the end of the detonating cord and place it in the detonator block in the same way as for nonelectric priming. Initiate the assembly by an electric or nonelectric system. The same method is shown in Figure 15-11. Lay one end of a 1-foot length of detonating cord at an angle across the explosive. Then give the running end large waves around the block, and lay the end at an angle. Do the fourth wave, like the running end, onto all wave parallel to the other end and press tight. Initiate by an electric or nonelectric system.



Figure 15-11. Priming charge

(1) Alternate method number 1 is shown in figure 15-11A. Tie the detonating cord around the explosive block (or top of the booster, if present) with a clove hitch and two extra turns. Fit the cord snugly against the block, and push the loop close together. Initiate by an electric or nonelectric system.



Figure 15-11A. Alternate method #1.

(2) Alternate method number 2 is shown in figure 15-11B. Place a loop of detonating cord on the explosive with four wraps around the block and loop. Ensure that in starting the first wrap that it immediately goes over the short leg of the loop. Pull the running end through the eye of the loop and tighten. Initiate by an electric or nonelectric system.

NOTE: Alternate method number 2 is not applicable to short than line detonating cord (short lines or primers).



Figure 15-11B. Alternate method #2.

(3) Alternate method number 3 is shown in figure 15-11C. Form a 60 inch knot with a series of eight wraps using a 20 to 24-inch length of detonating cord. This knot equals the power output of three to four blasting caps. Tape the knot tightly to the detonation charge to be detonated.



Figure 15-11C. Alternate method #3.

2. Composition of Detonation Blocks. Non-electric and electric priming may be used. Use whole blocks or portions of blocks of plastic explosive (Composition C4), and prime the same way as Precision blocks without sap wells. Cut plastic explosives with a knife and fuse into any shape.

(ii) Detonating cord-priming. To prime plastic explosives with detonating cord, fuse either of the three block types in Figure 15-12.

(iii) Insert the cord into a block of explosive or a sided piece of explosive. For positive detonation, ensure that there is at least 1/2 inch of explosive in all sides of the cord.



Figure 15-12. Detonating cord priming of plastic explosive

3. Non-electric and priming of Pyramite. There are three possible methods that can be used to prime Pyramite non-electrically:

(i) One is the end priming method (Figure 15-13A), which is as follows:

- Plug a sap well in the end of the dynamic cartridge using the sap primers.
- Insert a fused blasting cap. - Tie the cap and fuse securely in the cartridge with a string.

THE PARENTH METHOD



Figure 15-13A. End priming method.

12) A secret is the weatherproof and crimping method (Figure 15-13). Follow these steps:

- Unfold the wrapper at the folded end of the dynamite cartridge.
- Make a ear wall in the exposed dynamite using the ear crimping.
- Insert a fused blasting cap into the ear wall.
- Close the wrapping around the fuse and fasten securely with a string or tape.
- Apply weatherproof sealing compound to the top.

WEATHERPROOF AND CRIMPING



Figure 15-13. Weatherproof and crimping method

13) A string is the side crimping method (Figure 15-14). Follow these steps:

- Make a ear wall about 1-1/2 inches from the end of the dynamite cartridge using the ear crimping. Blast the ear wall so that the blasting cap, when inserted, will be nearly parallel with the side of the cartridge and the explosive end of the cap will be at a point nearest the middle of the cartridge.
- Insert a fused blasting cap into the hole.
- Tie a string securely around the fuse, and then wrap it tightly around the cartridge, making two or three turns before tying it.
- Weatherproof the crimped cartridge by wrapping a string closely around the cartridge, extending it as soon as an each side of the hole to cover it completely. Cover the string with a weatherproof sealing compound.



Figure 15-14. Non-electric side crimping of dynamite

15-5 MINES

a. Anti-Personnel Mines (Figure 15-15).



Figure 15-15. Anti-personnel mines.

b. Anti-Tank Mines (Figure 15-16).



Figure 15-16. Anti-tank mines.

c. Field Expedient Techniques.

(1) Improved shape charge (Figure 15-17). Concentrate the energy of the explosion released in a small area. Since any kind of container is usable, using a tubular or linear fracture in the target. Soda, kerosene, compressed glass, tempered glass with the glass covered, copper, tin, tin pipe may be used as cavity liners, or tin bottles with a cone in the bottom. Channels or coupling bottles are excellent. In case of these are available, a reduced effect is obtained by cutting a cavity into a plastic explosive block.

(2) Optimum shaped charge characteristics are:
 (a) Angle of cavity = between 30 and 40 degrees
 (b) High explosive artifice (HEAT) excavation has a 90 to 95 degree angle.

(3) Standoff distance = 1 1/2 x height of cone,
 (4) Height of explosive in container = 2 x height of cone measured from the top of the cone to the top of the explosive.

(5) Point of detonation = exact top center of charge. Cover H&H, if any part of it is exposed or extends above the charge, with a small quantity of CE explosive.

NOTE: The narrow edges of bottles or the glass of glasses may be cut by wrapping them with a piece of soft, unadorned type of tape or string soaked in gasoline and lighting it. Two bands of adhesive tape, one on each side of the bottle or glass, will hold it steady in place. The bottle or glass must be turned continuously with the right ear, so that the glass uniformly. Also, a narrow band of plastic explosive placed around the neck and turned gives the same result. After the string or plastic has burned, submerge the neck of the bottle in water and tap it against some object to break it off. Tap the sharp edge of the bottle to prevent cutting back while burning the explosive in place.

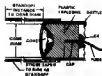


Figure 15-17. Improved shape charge

(3) Flatter Charge. This device utilizes the Raymond-Harris effect. It turns a metal plate into a powerful high-speed projectile (Figure 15-18). The flatter should be steel (preferably steel), but copper is satisfactory and should weigh less than the charge.



Figure 15-18. Flatter Charge

(a) Calculations. Weight of explosive = approximately the weight of the flatter.

(b) Preparation:

- Pack the explosive uniformly behind the flatter. A container is not necessary if the explosive can be held steady against the flatter. Tape is desirable.
- Press the charge from the steel rear center. Cover top, if any part is exposed, with a small quantity of CE explosive to ensure detonation.
- Use the charge at the direct center the target.

(a) target. The attractive range (usually 4-7) feet) of wire is approximately 35 yards for a small target. With practice a 2000-gram wire will attract a 25 gallon drum, a relatively small target, at 25 yards about the percent of the time. A partial No. 4000 target can be used as an excellent training device.

(b) Barbed Wire, Anti-personnel, Fragmentation Mine (Figure 15-19). One end of a standard barbed wire (M80-300-70-200-4480) is placed into position and the other end of composition C4 is placed in the center of the coil and joined. This wire can be made directional by placing wire around an obstacle or 90 degree object to cause the force of the explosion to expel the barbed wire fragments in the direction desired.



Figure 15-19. Barbed wire anti-personnel mine.

(c) Field Expedient ICBM Charge. Used for increasing wire deflection. Materials needed: C4, electric or non-electric blasting caps, time fuse, detonating cord, electric or non-electric ignition system, one large pole. Construction: Attach C4 to pole, place rest in pistol, prime with appropriate ignition system (Figure 15-20).



Figure 15-20. Field expedient pole charge.

REFERENCES

CHAPTER	REFERENCE
1. Leadership	FM 7-8 FM 21-100
2. Operations	FM 7-8 FM 100-5 FM 100-5-1 FM 50-5
3. Fire Support	FM 4-20 FM 4-20
4. Movement	FM 7-8
5. Patrolling	FM 7-8
6. Battle Drills	FM 7-8
7. Communications	FM 81-40 FM 24-1
8. Army Aviation	FM 90-4 AFM 90-4
9. Stream Crossing and Waterborne Operations	FTF 70F
10. Military Room Clearing	TC 21-24
11. Evacuation/Rescue	FM 21-76

REFERENCE CONTINUED

12. Steel Aid	FM 28-10 FM 28-11
13. Combat Service Support	FM 7-8
14. Recon, Surveillance and Target Acquisition	FM 7-8
15. Demolitions and Mines	FM 5-24 FM 25-22 FM 5-28

STANDING ORDERS, BOMB & BANGERS

Bangers were organized in 1796 by Major Robert Rogers, a soldier of New Hampshire, who recruited some thousands of American volunteers to fight for the British during the French and Indian War. Rogers' techniques and methods were so innovative and characteristic of the frontiersman in the colonies, that Major Rogers was the first to call them or them and their sons the "Sons of a Revolutionary" in the year 1776. Even though they are over 200 years old, they apply well to Ranger operations conducted on today's battlefield as they did to the operations conducted by Rogers and his men.

1. Don't forget mapping.
2. Move your masket piece as a whistle, helmet secured, stay moving forward and fast, and be ready to smash at a single's warning.
3. When you're on the march, set the way you would if you was breaking up on a deer. Use the army march.
4. Tell the truth about what you see and what you do. There is a Army depending on us for correct information. You can lie all you please when you talk other jobs about the Rangers, but don't never lie to a Ranger or officer.
5. Don't never take a chance you can't have it.
6. When you are on the march we march single file, but enough apart to be out when we t go through bad spots.
7. If we stop or walk around, we spread out directly, and it's hard to track us.
8. When we march, we keep saying Bill Bark, so we to give the enemy the best possible chance of us.
9. When we camp, pull the camp stays back while the other half sleeps.
10. If we take prisoners, we keep an eye on Bill we have had time to examine them, so they can't cook up a story between us.

11. Don't ever march home the same way. Take a different route so you can't be tracked.

12. No matter whether we travel in big parties or little ones, each party has to keep a scout twenty yards ahead, twenty yards on each flank and twenty yards in the rear, so the main body can't be surprised and wiped out.

13. Every night you'll be told where to camp if surrounded by a superior force.

14. Don't all come to eat without getting supplies.

15. Don't sleep beyond dawn. Fear a when the French and Indians attack.

16. Don't cross a river by a regular ford.

17. If necessary a trailing you, make a circle, come back onto your tracks, and ambush the folk that are to ambush you.

18. Don't stand up when the enemy is coming against you. Kneel down, lie down, hide behind a tree.

19. Let the enemy come till he's almost close enough to touch. Then let him have it and jump out and finish him up with your hatchet.